

Multi-Homing Security Gateway CS-1000

User's Manual

Copyright

Copyright (C) 2006 PLANET Technology Corp. All rights reserved.

The products and programs described in this User's Manual are licensed products of PLANET Technology, This User's Manual contains proprietary information protected by copyright, and this User's Manual and all accompanying hardware, software, and documentation are copyrighted.

No part of this User's Manual may be copied, photocopied, reproduced, translated, or reduced to any electronic medium or machine-readable form by any means by electronic or mechanical. Including photocopying, recording, or information storage and retrieval systems, for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use, and without the prior express written permission of PLANET Technology.

Disclaimer

PLANET Technology does not warrant that the hardware will work properly in all environments and applications, and makes no warranty and representation, either implied or expressed, with respect to the quality, performance, merchantability, or fitness for a particular purpose.

PLANET has made every effort to ensure that this User's Manual is accurate; PLANET disclaims liability for any inaccuracies or omissions that may have occurred.

Information in this User's Manual is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of PLANET. PLANET assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies that may be contained in this User's Manual. PLANET makes no commitment to update or keep current the information in this User's Manual, and reserves the right to make improvements to this User's Manual and/or to the products described in this User's Manual, at any time without notice. If you find information in this manual that is incorrect, misleading, or incomplete, we would appreciate your comments and suggestions.

CE mark Warning

This is a class B device, in a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Trademarks

The PLANET logo is a trademark of PLANET Technology.

This documentation may refer to numerous hardware and software products by their trade names. In most, if not all cases, these designations are claimed as trademarks or registered trademarks by their respective companies.



To avoid the potential effects on the environment and human health as a result of the presence of hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment, end users of electrical and electronic equipment should understand the meaning of the crossed-out wheeled bin symbol. Do not dispose of WEEE as unsorted municipal waste and have to collect such WEEE separately.

Customer Service

For information on customer service and support for the Multi-Homing Security Gateway, please refer to the following Website URL:

http://www.planet.com.tw

Before contacting customer service, please take a moment to gather the following information:

- Multi-Homing Security Gateway serial number and MAC address
- Any error messages that displayed when the problem occurred
- Any software running when the problem occurred
- Steps you took to resolve the problem on your own

Revision

User's Manual for PLANET Multi-Homing Security Gateway

Model: CS-1000

Rev: 1.0 (April, 2006)

Part No. EM-CS1000v1

Table of Contents

CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION	1
1.1 Features	1
1.2 PACKAGE CONTENTS	2
1.3 Multi-Homing Security Gateway Front View	
1.4 Multi-Homing Security Gateway Rear Panel	
1.5 Specification	
CHAPTER 2: GETTING STARTED	5
2.1 WEB CONFIGURATION	5
2.2 CONFIGURE WAN1 INTERFACE	6
2.3 CONFIGURE WAN2 INTERFACE	7
2.4 CONFIGURE DMZ INTERFACE	7
2.5 CONFIGURE POLICY	
CHAPTER 3: WEB CONFIGURATION	
3.1 System	
3.1.1 Admin	
3.1.2 Permitted IPs	
3.1.3 Software Update	
3.1.4 Setting	
3.1.5 Date/Time	
3.1.6 Multiple Subnet	
3.1.7 Route Table	
3.1.8 DHCP	
3.1.9 Dynamic DNS	
3.1.10 Host Table	
3.1.11 Language	
3.1.12 Logout	
3.2 INTERFACE	
3.2.1 LAN	
3.2.2 WAN	
3.2.3 DMZ	
3.3 POLICY OBJECT	
3.3.1 Address	
3.3.1.1 LAN	
3.3.1.2 LAN Group	

3.3.1.3 WAN	
3.3.1.4 WAN Group	
3.3.1.5 DMZ	
3.3.1.6 DMZ Group	
3.3.2 Service	
3.3.2.1 Pre-defined	
3.3.2.2 Custom	
3.3.2.3 Group	
3.3.3 Schedule	
3.3.4 QoS	
3.3.5 Authentication	
3.3.5.1 Auth Setting	
3.3.5.2 Auth User	
3.3.5.3 Auth Group	
3.3.5.4 Radius Serve	
3.3.5.5 POP3	
3.3.6 Content Blocking	
3.3.6.1 URL Blocking	
3.3.6.2 Scripts	
3.3.6.3 P2P	
3.3.6.4 IM	
3.3.6.5 Download	
3.3.6.6 Upload	
3.3.7 Virtual Server	
3.3.7.1 Mapped IP	
3.3.7.2 Virtual Server	
3.3.8 VPN	
3.3.8.1 IPSec Autokey	
3.3.8.2 PPTP Server	
3.3.8.3 PPTP Client	
3.3.8.4 Trunk	
3.4 POLICY	
3.4.1 Outgoing	
3.4.2 Incoming	
3.4.3 WAN To DMZ & LAN To DMZ	
3.4.4 DMZ To WAN & DMZ To LAN	
3.5 MAIL SECURITY	
3.5.1 Configure	
3.5.2 Anti-Spam	

3.5.2.1 Setting	
3.5.2.2 Rule	
3.5.2.3 Whitelist	
3.5.2.4 Blacklist	
3.5.2.5 Training	
3.5.2.6 Spam Mail	
3.5.3 Anti-Virus	
3.5.3.1 Setting	
3.5.3.2 Virus Mail	
3.6 IDP	
3.6.1 Setting	
3.6.2 Signature	
3.6.3 IDP Report	
3.7 ANOMALY FLOW IP	
3.8 MONITOR	
3.8.1 Log	
3.8.1.1 Traffic	
3.8.1.2 Event	
3.8.1.3 Connection	
3.8.1.4 Log Backup	
3.8.2 Accounting Report	
3.8.2.1 Setting	
3.8.2.2 Outbound	
3.8.2.3 Inbound	
3.8.3 Statistic	
3.8.3.1 WAN Statistics	
3.8.3.2 Policy Statistics	
3.8.4 Status	
3.8.4.1 Interface Status	
3.8.4.2 Authentication	
3.8.4.3 ARP Table	
3.8.4.4 DHCP Clients	

Chapter 1: Introduction

Thank you for purchasing new model of Planet's Security Gateway CS-1000, a special designed of security gateway, adopts Heuristics Analysis to filter spam and virus mail, auto-training system can raise identify rate of spam, and built-in Clam virus scan engine can detect viruses, worms and other threats from email transfer.

CS-1000 does not just provide the same feature as the previous generation product CS-500, such as Content Blocking to block specific URL, Scripts, IM/P2P program, IPSec and PPTP VPN server, QoS, Authentication etc. Built-in two WAN interfaces allow CS-1000 to support outbound load balance and wan fail-over feature. Furthermore, the VPN Trunk provides VPN fail-over and load balance features, that can offer a VPN redundant mechanism to keep your VPN connection being on line.

CS-1000 not only can filter spam and virus mail, but also is a high performance VPN firewall. Moreover, built-in IDP and firewall function can defense hacker and blaster attack from Internet or Intranet. The completely function in one device can provide you an excellent security solution and the secure environment than ever.

1.1 Features

- Anti-Spam Filtering: Multiple defense layers (Head Analysis, Text Analysis, Blacklist & Whitelist, Bayesian Filtering, Spam Fingerprint, Checking sender account and IP address), and Heuristics Analysis to block over 95% spam mail. Customizable notification options and spam mail report are provided for administrator. Varied actions toward spam mail include: Delete, Deliver, and Forward. Built-in auto-training system to rise identify rate of spam mail substantially.
- Anti-Virus Protection: Built-in Clam virus scan engine can detect viruses, worms, and other threats from email transfer. Scan mission-critical content protocols-SMTP, POP3 in real time as traffic enters the network to provide maximum protection. Customizable notification options and virus mail report are provided for administrator. Varied actions toward spam mail include: Delete, Deliver, and Forward.
- VPN Connectivity: The security gateway support PPTP server/client and IPSec VPN. With DES, 3DES and AES encryption and SHA-1 / MD5 authentication, the network traffic over public Internet is secured.
- VPN Trunk: VPN trunk function provides VPN load balance and VPN fail-over feature to keep the VPN connection more reliable.
- Content Filtering: The security gateway can block network connection based on URLs, Scripts (The Pop-up, Java Applet, cookies and Active X), P2P (eDonkey, Bit Torrent and WinMX), Instant Messaging (MSN, Yahoo Messenger, ICQ, QQ and Skype) and Download. If there are new updated version of P2P or IM software in client side, CS-1000 will detect the difference and update the Content Filtering pattern to renew the filtering mechanism.

- IDP: CS-1000 provides three kinds of the Signature to complete the intrusion detection system, user can select to configure "Anomaly", "Pre-defined" and "Custom" according to the current environment's request.
- Anti-Virus for HTTP, FTP, P2P, IM, NetBIOS: The CS-1000 not only can provide Anti-virus feature for mail, it also can filter the virus from varied protocol. The virus pattern can be updated automatically or manually.
- Policy-based Firewall: The built-in policy-based firewall prevent many known hacker attack including SYN attack, ICMP flood, UDP flood, Ping of Death, etc. The access control function allowed only specified WAN or LAN users to use only allowed network services on specified time.
- **QoS:** You can control the outbound and inbound Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth by configuring the QoS based on the WAN bandwidth.
- Authentication: Web-based authentication allows users to be authenticated by web browser. User database can be configured on the devices or through external RADIUS server.
- WAN Backup: The CS-1000 can monitor each WAN link status and automatically activate backup links when a failure is detected. The detection is based on the configurable target Internet addresses.
- Outbound Load Balancing: The network sessions are assigned based on the user configurable load balancing mode, including "Auto", "Round-Robin", "By Traffic", "By Session" and "By Packet". User can also configure which IP or TCP/UDP type of traffic use which WAN port to connect.
- Multiple NAT: Multiple NAT allows local port to set multiple subnet works and connect to the Internet through different WAN IP addresses.

1.2 Package Contents

The following items should be included:

CS-1000

- CS-1000 x 1
- Power Adapter x 1
- Quick Installation Guide x 1
- User's Manual CD x 1
- Console cable x 1
- RJ-45 cable
- Rack-mount ear

If any of the contents are missing or damaged, please contact your dealer or distributor immediately.

1.3 Multi-Homing Security Gateway Front View

CS-1000 Front Panel

PLANET	WANT	War	Lan	542	Multi-Homing Security Gateway
C5-1000					G FIRE G MATNE

LED	Description					
PWR	Power is	Power is supplied to this device.				
STATUS	Blinks to i	ndicate this devise is being turned on and				
	booting. A	booting. After one minute, this LED indicator will stop				
	blinking, i	blinking, it means this device is now ready to use.				
WAN1,	Green	Green Steady on indicates the port is connected				
WAN2, LAN,		to other network device.				
DMZ	Blink to indicates there is traffic on the port					
	Orange	Orange Steady on indicates the port is connected				
		at 100Mbps speed				

1.4 Multi-Homing Security Gateway Rear Panel

CS-1000 Rear Panel



1.5 Specification

Product		Multi-Homing Security Gateway				
Model		CS-1000				
Hardware						
Ethernet	LAN	1 x 10/100 Based-TX RJ-45				
WAN		2 x 10/100 Based-TX RJ-45				
	DMZ	1 x 10/100 Based-TX RJ-45				
Power		00~250 VAC, 50~60 Hz, 0.6A				
Operating Environment		Temperature: 0~60°C				
		Relative Humidity: 5%~95%				
Dimension W x D x H, mm		237 x 440 x 43				
Regulatory		FCC, CE Mark				
Software						
Management		Web				

Network Connection	Transparent mode (WAN to DMZ), NAT, Multi-NAT
Routing Mode	Static Route, RIPv2
Concurrent Sessions	110,000
New session / second	10,000
Email Capacity per Day	120,000
Firewall Throughout	100Mbps
3DES Throughput	17Mbps
Firewall	Policy-based firewall rule with schedule, NAT/NAPT, SPI firewall
VPN Tunnels	100/200
VPN Function	PPTP server and client, IPSec
	DES, 3DES and AES encrypting
	SHA-1 / MD5 authentication algorithm
	Remote access VPN (Client-to-Site) and Site to Site VPN
	VPN Trunk
Content Filtering	URL Blocking
Content i itering	Blocks Popup, Java Applet, cookies and Active X
	P2P Application Blocking
	Instant Message Blocking
	Download Blocking
IDP	Anti-Virus for HTTP, FTP, P2P, IM, NetBIOS
	Automatic or manual update virus and signature database
	Anomaly: Syn Flood, UDP Flood, ICMP Flood and more.
	Pre-defined : Backdoor, DDoS, DoS, Exploit, NetBIOS and Spyware.
	Custom: User defined based on TCP, UDP, ICMP or IP protocol.
Scanning Mail Settings	The allowed size of scanned mail: 10 ~ 512Kbytes
Anti-Virus	Email attachment virus scanning by SMTP, POP3
	Inbound scanning for internal and external Mail Server
	Action of infected mail: Delete, Deliver to the recipient, forward to an account
	Automatic or manual update virus database
Anti-Spam	Inbound scanning for external and internal Mail Server
	Support Spam Fingerprint, Bayesian filtering, checking sender account and IP
	to filter the spam mail
	Black list and white list support auto training system
	Action of spam mail : Delete, Deliver to the recipient, forward to an account
QoS	Policy-based bandwidth management
	Guarantee and maximum bandwidth with 3 priority levels
	Classify traffics based on IP, IP subnet, TCP/UDP port
User Authentication	Built-in user database with up to 200 entries
	Support local database, RADIUS and POP3 authentication
Logs	Log and alarm for event and traffic
5	Log can be saved from web, sent by e-mail or sent to syslog server
Accounting Report	Record inbound and outbound traffic's utilization by Source IP, Destination IP
J. J	and Service
Statistics	Traffic statistics for WAN interface and policies
	Graphic display
Others	Dynamic DNS, NTP, DHCP server, Virtual server,
0.1010	

Chapter 2: Getting Started

2.1 Web Configuration

STEP 1:

Connect both the Administrator's PC and the LAN port of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway to a hub or switch. Make sure there is a link light on the hub/switch for both connections. The Multi-Homing Security Gateway has an embedded web server used for management and configuration. Use a web browser to display the configurations of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway (such as Internet Explorer 4(or above) or Netscape 4.0(or above) with full java script support). The default IP address of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway is **192.168.1.1** with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0. Therefore, the IP address of the Administrator PC must be in the range between 192.168.1.2–192.168.1.254

If the company's LAN IP Address is not subnet of 192.168.1.0, (i.e. LAN IP Address is 172.16.0.1), then the Administrator must change his/her PC IP address to be within the same range of the LAN subnet (i.e. 172.16.0.2). Reboot the PC if necessary.

By default, the Multi-Homing Security Gateway is shipped with its DHCP Server function enabled. This means the client computers on the LAN network including the Administrator PC can set their TCP/IP settings to automatically obtain an IP address from the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

STEP 2:

Once the Administrator PC has an IP address as the same network as the Multi-Homing Security Gateway, open up an Internet web browser and type in <u>http://192.168.1.1</u> in the address bar.

A pop-up screen will appear and prompt for a username and password. A username and password is required to connect to the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. Enter the default login username and password of Administrator (see below).

Username: Password:	admin admin		
Click OK.		Connect to 193	2.168.1.1 🛛 🛛 🔀
			GE
		Bandwidth Admin	
		User name:	🖸 admin 🕑
		Password:	•••••
			Remember my password
			OK Cancel

2.2 Configure WAN1 interface

After entering the username and password, the Multi-Homing Security Gateway WEB UI screen will display.

Select the Interface tab on the left menu then click on WAN below it.

Click on Modify button of WAN NO.1. The following page is shown.

	Interface > WAN
System System Interface ↓ LAN → WAN	WAN1 Interface Service : DNS Y Domain name : Assist
L⇒ DMZ ■ Policy Object ■ Policy ■ Mail Security ■ IDP	 Wait 1 seconds between sending alive packet. (0 - 99 , 0 : means not checking) PPPoE (ADSL User) Dynamic IP Address (Cable Modern User) Static IP Address
≇ Anomaly Flow IP ≇ Monitor	IP Address Netmask Default Gateway DNS Server 1 DNS Server 2
	Max. Downstream Bandwidth Kbps (Max. 50 Mbps) Max. Upstream Bandwidth Kbps (Max. 50 Mbps) Enable Ping
	OK

Alive Indicator Site IP: This feature is used to ping an address for detecting WAN connection status.

Service: ICMP You can select an IP address by Assist, or type an IP address manually.

Service: DNS You can select a DNS IP and Domain name by Assist, or type the related data manually.

PPPoE (ADSL User): This option is for PPPoE users who are required to enter a username and password in order to connect.

Username: Enter the PPPoE username provided by the ISP.

Password: Enter the PPPoE password provided by the ISP.

IP Address provided by ISP:

Dynamic: Select this if the IP address is automatically assigned by the ISP.

Fixed: Select this if you were given a static IP address. Enter the IP address that is given to you by your ISP.

Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth: The bandwidth provided by ISP.

Service-On-Demand:

The PPPoE connection will automatically disconnect after a length of idle time (no activities). Enter in the amount of idle minutes before disconnection. Enter '0' if you do not want the PPPoE connection to disconnect at all.

For Dynamic IP Address (Cable Modem User): This option is for users who are automatically assigned an IP address by their ISP, such as cable modem users. The following fields apply:

MAC Address: This is the MAC Address of the device. Some ISPs require specified MAC address. If the required MAC address is your PC's, click **Clone MAC Address**.

Hostname: This will be the name assign to the device. Some cable modem ISP assign a specific hostname in order to connect to their network. Please enter the hostname here. If not required by your ISP, you do not have to enter a hostname.

Domain Name: You can specify your own domain name or leave it blank.

User Name: The user name is provided by ISP.

Password: The password is provided by ISP.

Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth: The bandwidth provided by ISP.

For Static IP Address: This option is for users who are assigned a static IP Address from their ISP. Your ISP will provide all the information needed for this section such as IP Address, Netmask, Gateway, and DNS. Use this option also if you have more than one public IP Address assigned to you.

IP Address: Enter the static IP address assigned to you by your ISP. This will be the public IP address of the WAN port of the device.

Netmask: This will be the Netmask of the WAN network. (i.e. 255.255.255.0)

Default Gateway: This will be the Gateway IP address.

Domain Name Server (DNS): This is the IP Address of the DNS server.

Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth: The bandwidth provided by ISP.

Ping: Select this to allow the WAN network to ping the IP Address of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. This will allow people from the Internet to be able to ping the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. If set to enable, the device will respond to echo request packets from the WAN network.

HTTP: Select this will allow the WebUI to be configured from a user on the Internet. Keep in mind that the device always requires a username and password to enter the WebUI.

2.3 Configure WAN2 interface

If you want to connect WAN 2 to another ISP connection, click **Modify** button of **WAN No. 2** then repeat above procedures to setup.

2.4 Configure DMZ interface

Depends on your network requirement, you can disable the DMZ port, make DMZ port transparent to WAN or enable NAT function on it.

To configure the DMZ port, select the **Interface** tab on the left menu, then click on DMZ, the following page is shown.

	Interface > DMZ			
⊯ System ⊜ Interface		Disable		
LAN L⇒ WAN	IP Address	IDISADE 0.0 NAT 0.0 DMZ_TRANSPARENT 0.0		
🗷 Policy Object 🍽 Policy	Enable	Ping	🔲 НТТР	
■ Mail Security ■ IDP ■ Anomaly Flow IP				OK Cancel
Monitor				

2.5 Configure Policy

STEP 1:

Click on the **Policy** tab from the main function menu, and then click on **Outgoing** (LAN to WAN) from the sub-function list.

STEP 2:

Click on New Entry button.

STEP 3:

When the **New Entry** option appears, enter the following configuration:

Source Address - select "Inside_Any"

Destination Address - select "Outside_Any"

Service - select "ANY"

Action - select "Permit, ALL"

Click on **OK** to apply the changes.

PLANET		
Vetworking & Communication	Policy > Outgoing	
	r oncy > Outgoing	
System	Comment :	
Interface	Modify Policy	
Policy Object Policy	Source Address	Inside_Any V
Outgoing	Destination Address	Outside_Any V
➡ Incoming	Service	ANY
WAN To DMZ	Schedule	None V
LAN TO DMZ	Authentication User	None V
DMZ To WAN		
DMZ To LAN	Trunk	None 💌
fail Security	Action, WAN Port	PERMIT ALL
DP	Traffic Log	Enable
Anomaly Flow IP	Statistics	Enable
Monitor	IDP	
	Content Blocking	Enable
	MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
	QoS	None 🗸

OK Cancel

STEP 4:

The configuration is successful when the screen below is displayed.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy > Outgoir	ng					
🗷 System							
🗉 Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
🗉 Policy Object	Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	 ✓ 		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌
E Policy							
-+ Outgoing					New Entry		
→ Incoming							
-+ WAN To DMZ							
-⇒ LAN To DMZ							
→ DMZ To WAN							
→ DMZ To LAN							
🗷 Mail Security							
IDP							
🗉 Anomaly Flow IP							
🎟 Monitor							

Please make sure that all the computers connected to LAN port must set their Default Gateway IP Address to the Multi-Homing Security Gateway's LAN IP Address (i.e. 192.168.1.1). At this point, all the computers on the LAN network should gain access to the Internet immediately. If a Multi-Homing Security Gateway filter function is required, please refer to the Policy section in chapter 3.

Chapter 3: Web Configuration

3.1 System

The Multi-Homing Security Gateway Administration and monitoring configuration is set by the System Administrator. The System Administrator can add or modify System settings and monitoring mode. The sub Administrators can only read System settings but not modify them. In **System**, the System Administrator can:

- 1. Add and change the sub Administrator's names and passwords;
- 2. Back up all Multi-Homing Security Gateway settings into local files;

"System" is the managing of settings such as the privileges of packets that pass through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway and monitoring controls. Administrators may manage, monitor, and configure Multi-Homing Security Gateway settings. All configurations are "read-only" for all users other than the Administrator; those users are not able to change any settings for the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

System setting can divide into two parts: Administration, Configure and Logout.

Administration:

Admin: controls user access right to the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. User can add/remove users and change passwords.

Permitted IPs: Enables the Administrator to authorize specific internal/external IP address(es) for gateway managing.

Software Update: The administrator can update the device's software with the latest version downloaded from Planet's website, in order to optimize the performance and keep up with the latest fixes for intruding attacks.

Configure:

Setting: The Administrator may use this function to backup Multi-Homing Security Gateway configurations and export (save) them to a computer; or restore a configuration file to the device; or reset the Multi-Homing Security Gateway back to default factory settings. Under **Setting**, the Administrator may enable e-mail alert notification. This will alert Administrator(s) automatically whenever the Multi-Homing Security Gateway has experienced unauthorized access or a network hit (hacking or flooding). Once enabled, an IP address of a SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer protocol) Server is required. Up to two e-mail addresses can be entered for the alert notifications.

Date/Time: This function enables the Multi-Homing Security Gateway to be synchronized based on an Internet Time Server or with the client computer's clock.

Multiple Subnet: This function allows local port to be set with multiple IP subnet, and allow all clients connecting to the internet via WAN IP Address.

Route Table: Use this function to configure static route for the networks when the dynamic route is not efficient enough.

DHCP: Administrator can configure DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) settings for the LAN (LAN) network.

Dynamic DNS: The Dynamic DNS (require Dynamic DNS Service) allows you to alias a dynamic IP address to a static hostname, allowing your device to be more easily accessed by specific name. When this function is enabled, the IP address in Dynamic DNS Server will be automatically updated with the new IP address provided by ISP.

Host Table: The Multi-Homing Security Gateway Administrator may use the Host Table function to make the Multi-Homing Security Gateway act as a DNS Server for the LAN and DMZ network. All DNS requests to a specific Domain Name will be routed to the Multi-Homing Security Gateway's IP address. For example, let's say an organization has their mail server (i.e., mail.planet.com.tw) in the DMZ network (i.e. 192.168.10.10). The outside Internet world may access the mail server of the organization easily by its domain name, providing that the Administrator has set up Virtual Server or Mapped IP settings correctly. However, for the users in the LAN network, their WAN DNS server will assign them a public IP address for the mail server. So for the LAN network to access the mail server (mail.planet.com.tw), they would have to go out to the Internet, then to come back through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway to access the mail server. Essentially, the LAN network is accessing the mail server by a real public IP address, while the mail server serves their request by a NAT address and not a real one. This odd situation occurs when there are servers in the DMZ network computers will use the Multi-Homing Security Gateway as a DNS server, which acts as the DNS Proxy.

Language: Both Chinese and English are supported in the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

Logout:

Logout: Administrator logs out the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. This function protects your system while you are away.

3.1.1 Admin

On the left hand menu, click on **Administration**, and then select **Admin** below it. The current list of Administrator(s) shows up.

PLANET Reflecting & Communication System > A	Administration > Admin		
System GAdministration	Admin Name	Privilege	Configure
L⇒Admin ←←	admin	Read/Write	Modify
–♦ Permitted IPs			
L		New Sub Admin	
± Configure			
I Logout			
■ Interface			

Settings of the Administration table

<u>Admin Name</u>: The username of Administrators for the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. The user **admin** cannot be removed.

Privilege: The privileges of Administrators (Admin or Sub Admin)

The username of the main Administrator is Admin with read / write privilege.

Sub Admin may be created by clicking New Sub Admin. Sub Admin have read only privilege.

Configure: Click Modify to change the "Sub Admin" password and click Remove to delete a "Sub Admin".

Changing the Main/Sub-Admin's Password

Step 1. The Modify Admin Password window will appear. Enter in the required information:

- **Password:** enter original password.
- New Password: enter new password
- **Confirm Password:** enter the new password again.

Step 2. Click OK to confirm password change or click Cancel to cancel it.

	System > Administration > Admin		
l≣ System	Modify Admin Password		
🖻 Administration			
→ Admin	Admin Name	admin	
→ Permitted IPs	Password	•••••	
L⇒ Software Update	New Password	•••••	
■ Configure	Confirm Password		
■ Logout			
🗷 Interface			OK Cancel
■ Policy Object			

Adding a new Sub Admin

Step 1. In the Add New Sub Admin window:

- **Sub Admin Name:** enter the username of new **Sub Admin.**
- Password: enter a password for the new Sub Admin.
- **Confirm Password:** enter the password again.
- Step 2. Click OK to add the user or click Cancel to cancel the addition.

	System > Administration > Admin		
E System	Add New Sub Admin		
Administration Admin	Sub Admin name	planet	
→ Permitted IPs	Password	•••••	
L⇒ Software Update	Confirm Password	•••••	
■ Configure			
I Logout			OK Cancel
📧 Interface			

Removing a Sub Admin

- **Step 1.** In the Administration table, locate the Admin name you want to edit, and click on the **Remove** option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. The Remove confirmation pop-up box will appear. Click OK to remove that Sub Admin or click Cancel to cancel.

Retworking & Communication	Administration > Admin		
≣ System			
□ Administration	Admin Name	Privilege	Configure
L⇒ Admin	admin	Read/Write	Modify
-→ Permitted IPs	planet	Read	Modify Remove
➡ Software Update			
± Configure		New Sub Admin	
∓ Logout			
Interface	Microsoft Internet E	xplorer 🔀	
Policy Object	Are you sure	you want to remove ?	
Policy		you want to remove :	
Mail Security	ОК	Cancel	
IDP		Cancel	
Anomaly Flow IP			

3.1.2 Permitted IPs

Only the authorized IP address is permitted to manage the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	System > Administration > Permitted IPs				
 System Administration Admin Permitted IPs ← ← Software Update Configure 	Name	IP Address / Netmask New Entry	Ping	НТТР	Configure

Add Permitted IPs Address

Step 1. Click New Entry button.

Step 2. In IP Address field, enter the LAN IP address or WAN IP address.

- **Name**: Enter the host name for the authorized IP address.
- IP Address: Enter the LAN IP address or WAN IP address.
- Netmask: Enter the netmask of LAN/WAN.
- **Ping**: Select this to allow the external network to ping the IP Address of the Firewall.
- HTTP: Check this item, Web User can use HTTP to connect to the Setting window of Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

Step 3. Click OK to add Permitted IP or click Cancel to discard changes.

	System > Administration > Permitted IPs	
System SAdministration	Add New Permitted IPs	
-⇒ Admin	Name	planet
→ Permitted IPs	IP Address	192.168.1.10
Software Update	Netmask	255.255.255.255
■ Configure	Service	Ping HTTP
I Logout		
■ Interface ■ Policy Object		OK Cancel

Modify Permitted IPs Address

Step 1. In the table of **Permitted IPs**, highlight the IP you want to modify, and then click **Modify**.

Step 2. In Modify Permitted IPs, enter new IP address.

Step 3. Click OK to modify or click Cancel to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	System > Administration > Permitted IPs		
■ System ■ Administration	Modify Permitted IPs		
L⇒ Admin	Name	planet	
→ Permitted IPs	IP Address	192.168.1.10	
L⇒ Software Update	Netmask	255.255.255	
■ Configure	Service	Ping HTTP	
■ Logout			
■ Interface ■ Policy Object			OK Cancel

Remove Permitted IPs Addresses

Step 1. In the table of **Permitted IPs**, highlight the IP you want to remove, and then click **Remove**.

Step 2. In the confirm window, click OK to remove or click Cancel to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	System > Administration	> Permitted IPs			
≣ System	Name	IP Address / Netmask	Ping	HTTP	Configure
■ Administration	planet	192.168.1.10 / 255.255.255.255	\checkmark	V	Modify Remove
→ Permitted IPs					
■● Software Update		New	Entry		
■ Configure					
∓ Logout		Microsoft Internet Explorer	X		
Interface		microsoft internet Explorer			
Policy Object		Are you sure you want to rem	ove?		
Policy		~			
Mail Security	OK Cancel				
IDP					
Anomaly Flow IP		2			
Monitor					

3.1.3 Software Update

Under **Software Update**, the admin may update the device's software with newer software. You may acquire the current version number of software in **Version Number**. Administrators may visit Planet's website to download the latest version and save it in server's hard disk.

Step 1. Click Browse to select the latest version of Software.

Step 2. Click OK to update software.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	System > Administration > Software Update		
E System	Software Update		
Administration Admin Permitted IPs Software Update	Version Number : Software Update	v 2.12.8 Browse (ex: CS-1000_021208.img)	
 ■ Configure ■ Logout 			OK Cancel

NOTE: It takes three minutes to update the software. The system will restart automatically after updating the software.

3.1.4 Setting

The Administrator may use this function to backup Multi-Homing Security Gateway configurations and export (save) them to the "**Administrator**" computer or anywhere on the network; or restore a configuration file to the device; or restore the Multi-Homing Security Gateway back to default factory settings.

Entering the Settings window

Click Setting in the Configure menu to enter the Settings window. The Setting will be shown on the screen.

PLANET Retworking & Communication Syste	em > Configure > Setting	
System	Backup / Restore Configuration	
■ Administration	Export System Setting to Client Download	
S Configure	Import System Setting from Client	Browse
→ Setting → Date/Time	······································	(ex: CSsystem.conf)
-→ Multiple Subnet	Reset Factory Setting	
-+ Route Table		
-⇒ DHCP	System Name Setting	
_ ➡ Dynamic DNS	Device Name	Multi-Homing Security (ex: Multi-Homing Security Gateway)
→ Host Table	E-mail Setting	
L⇒ Language	Enable E-mail Alert Notification	
I Logout	Sender Address (Required by some ISPs)	(ex: sender@mydomain.com)
Interface	SMTP Server	
■ Policy Object ■ Policy		(ex: mail.mydomain.com)
🖬 Folicy 🎟 Mail Security	E-mail Address 1	(ex: user1@mydomain.com)
	E-mail Address 2	(ex: user2@mydomain.com)
Anomaly Flow IP	Mail Test	Mail Test
I Monitor	Web Management (WAN Interface)	
	HTTP Port	80
	MTLLCotting	
	MTU Setting	4.500
	MTU	1500 Bytes
	Link Speed / Duplex Mode Setting	
	WAN1	Auto Mode 🛛 🖌
	WAN2	Auto Mode
	Dynamic Routing (RIPv2)	
	Enable LAN VVAN1 WAN2 D	MZ
	Routing information update timer	
	Routing information timeout	180 Seconds
	To-Appliance Packets Log	
	Enable To-Appliance Packets Log	
	System Reboot	
	Reboot Multi-Homing Security Gateway Appliance	Reboot

Exporting Multi-Homing Security Gateway settings

- Step 1. Under Backup/Restore Configuration, click on the Download button next to Export System Settings to Client.
- **Step 2.** When the **File Download** pop-up window appears, choose the destination place to save the exported file. The **Administrator** may choose to rename the file if preferred.

Backu	n/Restore	Configuration
Daona		Configuration

Exp	File Download	
Impo Sys Der E-n	Do you want to save this file? Name: CSsystem.conf Type: Unknown File Type, 2.00 MB From: 192.168.10.1 Save Cancel	wse ti-Homing Security Gateway)
	harm your computer. If you do not trust the source, do not save this file. What's the risk?	ider@mydomain.com) I.mydomain.com) er1@mydomain.com)

Importing Multi-Homing Security Gateway settings

Under Backup/Restore Configuration, click on the Browse button next to Import System Settings from

Client. When the **Choose File** pop-up window appears, select the file which contains the saved Multi-Homing Security Gateway Settings, then click **OK**.

Click OK to import the file into the Multi-Homing Security Gateway or click Cancel to cancel importing.

Backup / Restore Configuration	
Export System Setting to Client Download	
Import System Setting from Client	C: Documents and Setting: Browse
	(ex: CSsystem.conf)
Reset Factory Setting	

Restoring Factory Default Settings

Step 1. Select Reset Factory Settings under Backup/Restore Configuration.

Step 2. Click OK at the bottom-right of the screen to restore the factory settings.

Backup / Restore Configuration	
Export System Setting to Client Download	
Import System Setting from Client	Browse
	(ex: CSsystem.conf)
Reset Factory Setting	

System Name Setting

Input the name you want into **Device Name** column to be the device name.

Email Setting

- Step 1. Select Enable E-mail Alert Notification under E-Mail Setting. This function will enable the Multi-Homing Security Gateway to send e-mail alerts to the System Administrator when the network is being attacked by hackers or when emergency conditions occur.
- Step 2. SMTP Server IP: Enter SMTP server's IP address.
- Step 3. E-Mail Address 1: Enter the first e-mail address to receive the alarm notification.
- Step 4. E-Mail Address 2: Enter the second e-mail address to receive the alarm notification. (Optional)

Click **OK** on the bottom-right of the screen to enable E-mail alert notification.

E-m	ail Setting	
~	Enable E-mail Alert Notification	
	Sender Address (Required by some ISPs)	support@planet.com (ex: sender@mydomain.com)
	SMTP Server	planet.com.tw (ex: mail.mydomain.com)
	E-mail Address 1	admin@planet.com.tv (ex: user1@mydomain.com)
	E-mail Address 2	operator@planet.com (ex: user2@mydomain.com)
	Mail Test	Mail Test

Web Management (WAN Interface)

The administrator can change the port number used by HTTP port anytime. (Remote UI Management)

Step 1. Set Web Management (WAN Interface). The administrator can change the port number used by HTTP port anytime.

Web Management (WAN Interface)	
HTTP Port	80

MTU (set networking packet length)

The administrator can modify the networking packet length.

Step 1. MTU Setting. Modify the networking packet length.

MTU Setting		
MTU	1500	Bytes

Link Speed / Duplex Mode Setting

This function allows administrator to set the transmission speed and mode of WAN Port.

Link Speed / Duplex Mode Setting			
WAN1	Auto Mode 💙		
WAN2	Auto Mode 💌		
	Auto Mode		
Dynamic Routing (RIPv2)	10M Half Duplex		
	10M Full Duplex		
Enable 🗹 LAN 🗹 WAN1 🗹 WAN2 🗹 DMZ	100M Half Duplex		
Routing information update timer	100M Full Duplex SUSeconds		

Dynamic Routing (RIPv2)

Enable Dynamic Routing (RIPv2), CS-1000 will advertise an IP address pool to the specific network so that the address pool can be provided to the network. You can choose to enable LAN, WAN or DMZ interface to allow RIP protocol supporting.

Routing information update timer: CS-1000 will send out the RIP protocol in a period of time to update the routing table, the default timer is 30 seconds.

Routing information timeout: If CS-1000 does not receive the RIP protocol from the other router in a period of time, it will cut off the routing automatically until it receives RIP protocol again. The default timer is 180 seconds.

Dynamic Routing (RIPv2)				
Enable 🔽 LAN 🔽 WAN1 🔽 WAN2 💌 DMZ				
Routing information update timer	30 Seconds			
Routing information timeout	180 Seconds			

To-Appliance Packet Logging

When the function is selected, the CS-1000 will record the packets that contain the IP address of CS-1000 in source or destination, the records will display in Traffic Log for administrator to inquire about.

To-Appliance Packets Log

Enable To-Appliance Packets Log

System Reboot

Once this function is enabled, the Multi-Homing Security Gateway will be rebooted.

Reboot Appliance: Click Reboot.

A confirmation pop-up box will appear. Follow the confirmation pop-up box, click **OK** to restart Multi-Homing Security Gateway or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

MTU Setting				
MTU	1500 Bytes			
Link Speed / Duplex Mode Setting				
VVAN1	Auto Mode 🔽			
WAN2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 🔀			
Dynamic Routing (RIPv2)	Are you sure to Reboot ?			
Enable 🗌 LAN 📄 WAN1 📄 WAN2				
Routing information update timer	OK Cancel			
Routing information timeout				
To-Appliance Packets Log				
✓ Enable To-Appliance Packets Log				
System Reboot				
Reboot Multi-Homing Security Gateway Appliance Reboot				

3.1.5 Date/Time

Synchronizing the Multi-Homing Security Gateway with the System Clock

Administrator can configure the Multi-Homing Security Gateway's date and time by either syncing to an Internet Network Time Server (NTP) or by syncing to your computer's clock.

Follow these steps to sync to an Internet Time Server

- **Step 1.** Enable synchronization by checking the box.
- **Step 2.** Click the down arrow to select the offset time from GMT.
- Step 3. Enter the Server IP Address or Server name with which you want to synchronize.

Step 4. Update system clock every minutes You can set the interval time to synchronize with outside servers. If you set it to 0, it means the device will not synchronize automatically.

Follow this step to sync to your computer's clock.

Step 1. Click on the Sync button.

Click **OK** to apply the setting or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	System > Configure > Date/Time	
 System Administration Configure Setting Date/Time ← ← Multiple Subnet Route Table DHCP DHCP Dynamic DNS Host Table Language 	System time : Wed Jan 1 05:07:16 2003 Synchronize system clock C Enable synchronize with an Internet time Server Set offset O P hours from GMT Assist Server IP / Name 131.188.3.220 Assist Update system clock every minutes (0 : means update at booting time) Synchronize system clock with this client Sync	OK Cancel

3.1.6 Multiple Subnet

NAT mode

Multiple Subnet allows local port to set multiple subnet works and connect with the Internet through WAN IP Addresses.

For instance, the lease line of a company applies several real IP Addresses 168.85.88.0/24, and the company is divided into R&D department, service, sales department, procurement department, accounting department, the company can distinguish each department by different subnet works for the purpose of convenient management. The settings are as the following:

1. R&D department sub-network: 192.168.1.11/24 (LAN) ←→ 168.85.88.253 (WAN)

2. Service department sub-network: 192.168.2.11/24 (LAN) ←→ 168.85.88.252 (WAN)

3. Sales department sub-network: 192.168.3.11/24 (LAN) ← → 168.85.88.251 (WAN)

4. Procurement department sub-network: 192.168.4.11/24 (LAN) ←→ 168.85.88.250(WAN)

5. Accounting department sub-network: 192.168.5.11/24 (LAN) ←→ 168.85.88.249 (WAN)

The first department (R&D department) was set while setting interface IP, the other four ones have to be added in Multiple Subnet, after completing the settings, each department use the different WAN IP address to connect to the internet. The settings of LAN computers on Service department are as the following:

Service IP Address: 192.168.2.1

Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Default Gateway: 192.168.2.11

The other departments are also set by groups, this is the function of Multiple Subnet.

Multiple Subnet settings

Click **System** on the left side menu bar, select **Configure** then click **Multiple Subnet** to enter Multiple Subnet window.

	System > Config	ure > Multiple Subnet			
E System		WAN Interface IP / Forwarding Mode	Interface	Alias IP of Interface / Netmask	Configure
■ Administration ■ Configure		168.85.88.252 / NAT	LAN	192.168.2.1 / 255.255.255.0	Modify Remove
_✦ Setting _✦ Date/Time			N	ew Entry	
_⇒ Multiple Subnet ← ← _⇒ Route Table					
_⇒ DHCP					

Multiple Subnet functions

WAN Interface IP / Forwarding Mode: Display WAN Port IP address and Forwarding Mode.

Interface: Indicate the multiple subnet location in LAN or DMZ site.

Alias IP of Interface / Netmask: Local port IP address and subnet Mask.

Configure: Modify the settings of Multiple Subnet. Click Modify to modify the parameters of Multiple Subnet or click Delete to delete settings.

Add a Multiple Subnet NAT Mode.

Step 1: Click the New Entry button below to add Multiple Subnet.

Step 2: Enter the IP address in the website name column of the new window.

Alias IP of Interface: Enter Local port IP address.

Netmask: Enter Local port subnet Mask.

WAN Interface IP: Add WAN IP.

Forwarding Mode: Click the NAT button below to setup.

Step 3: Click OK to add Multiple Subnet or click Cancel to discard changes.

	System > Configure > Multiple Subnet		
l≡ System	Add New Multiple Subnet IP		
Administration Gonfigure	Interface	●LAN ●DMZ	
→ Setting	Alias IP of Interface	192.168.2.1	
_♦ Date/Time	Netmask	255.255.255.0	
–♦ Multiple Subnet			
→ Route Table	V	VAN Interface IP	Forwarding Mode
-⇒ DHCP	WAN	168.85.88.252 Assist	NAT OROUTING
■ Dynamic DNS			
→ Host Table			OK Cancel
L⇒ Language ⊒ Logout			

Modify a Multiple Subnet

Step 1: Find the IP address you want to modify and click Modify.

Step 2: Enter the new IP address in Modify Multiple Subnet window.

Step 3: Click the OK button below to change the setting or click Cancel to discard changes.

	System > Configure > Multiple Subnet		
■ System ■ Administration	Modify Multiple Subnet IP		
⊒ Configure	Interface	● LAN ● DMZ	
→ Setting	Alias IP of Interface	192.168.2.1	
_⇒ Date/Time	Netmask	255.255.255.0	
→ Multiple Subnet			
→ Route Table	V	VAN Interface IP	Forwarding Mode
–♦ DHCP –♦ Dynamic DNS	WAN	168.85.88.252 <u>Assist</u>	NAT OR Routing
-→ Host Table -→ Language			OK Cancel
≖ Logout			

Removing a Multiple Subnet

Step 1: Find the IP address you want to delete and click Delete.

Step 2: A confirmation pop-up box will appear, click OK to delete the setting or click Cancel to discard changes.

	System > Configure > Multiple Subnet	
■ System		
■ Administration	WAN Interface IP / Forwarding Mode Interfa	ace Alias IP of Interface / Netmask Configure
I Configure	168.85.88.252 / NAT LAM	I 192.168.2.1 / 255.255.255.0 Modify Remove
_♦ Setting		
_♦ Date/Time		New Entry
→ Multiple Subnet		
→ Route Table		
-⇒ DHCP	Microsoft Internet Explore	
→ Dynamic DNS		
_♦ Host Table	Are you sure you war	t to remove ?
L⇒ Language		
E Logout	OK Cano	el
📧 Interface		

Routing Mode

Multiple Subnet allows local port to set Multiple Subnet Routing Mode and connect with the Internet through WAN IP address.

For example, the leased line of a company applies several real IP Addresses 168.85.88.0/24 and the company is divided into R&D, Customer Service, Sales, Procurement, and Accounting Department. The company can distinguish each department by different sub-network for the purpose of convenient management.

The settings are as the following:

R&D: Alias IP of LAN interface - 168.85.88.1, Netmask: 255.255.255.192

Sales: Alias IP of LAN interface - 168.85.88.65, Netmask: 255.255.255.192

Procurement: Alias IP of LAN interface - 168.85.88.129, Netmask: 255.255.255.192

Accounting: Alias IP of LAN interface - 168.85.88.193, Netmask: 255.255.255.192

Click System on the left side menu bar, then click Multiple Subnet below Configure menu. Enter Multiple Subnet window.

	System ≻ Config	ure > Multiple Subnet			
■ System					
■ Administration		WAN Interface IP / Forwarding Mode	Interface	Alias IP of Interface / Netmask	Configure
E Configure		/ Routing	LAN	168.85.88.1 / 255.255.255.192	Modify Remove
L⇒ Setting					
_♦ Date/Time			N	ew Entry	
_➡ Multiple Subnet					
→ Route Table					

Multiple Subnet functions

WAN Interface IP / Forwarding Mode: Display WAN Port IP address and Forwarding Mode which is NAT Mode or Routing Mode.

Interface: Indicate the multiple subnet location in LAN or DMZ site.

Alias IP of Interface / Netmask: Local port IP address and subnet Mask.

Configure: Modify the settings of Multiple Subnet. Click Modify to modify the parameters of Multiple Subnet or click Delete to delete settings.

Adding a Multiple Subnet Routing Mode

Step 1: Click the Add button below to add Multiple Subnet.

Step 2: Enter the IP address in Add Multiple Subnet window.

Alias IP of Interface: Enter Local port IP Address.

Netmask: Enter Local port subnet Mask.

WAN Interface IP: Add WAN IP

Forwarding Mode: Click the Routing button below to setup.

Step 3: Click OK to add Multiple Subnet or click Cancel to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	System > Configure > Multiple Subnet		
⋐ System I≇ Administration	Add New Multiple Subnet IP		
E Configure	Interface	● LAN ● DMZ	
_⇒ Setting	Alias IP of Interface	168.85.88.1	
–✦ Date/Time –✦ Multiple Subnet	Netmask	255.255.255.192	
→ Route Table	WAY	N Interface IP	Forwarding Mode
 → DHCP → Dynamic DNS → Host Table → Language 	WAN	0.0.0.0 <u>Assist</u>	NAT Routing OK Cancel
■ Logout			

Step 4: Adding a new WAN to LAN Policy. In the Incoming window, click the New Entry button.

PLANET	Policy > Incoming						
System 3		-					
Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Policy Object	Outside_Any	Inside_Any(Routing)	ANY	1		Modify Remove Pause	То 1 💌
E Policy							
+ Outgoing					New Entry		
+ Incoming							
➡ WAN To DMZ							
+ LAN To DMZ							

Modify a Multiple Subnet Routing Mode

Step 1: Find the IP address you want to modify in Multiple Subnet menu, then click Modify button, on the right side of the service providers, click OK.

Step 2: Enter the new IP address in Modify Multiple Subnet window.

Step 3: Click the OK button below to change the setting or click Cancel to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	System > Configure > Multiple S	lubnet			
l≣ System	Modify Multiple	Cubrot ID			
■ Administration					
🗉 Configure	Interface		⊙LAN ○DMZ		
→ Setting	Alias IP of Interfa	ce	168.85.88.1		
_ ➡ Date/Time	Netmask		255.255.255.192		
→ Multiple Subnet					
→ Route Table		WAN Int	erface IP		Forwarding Mode
-⇒DHCP					
→ Dynamic DNS		WAN	0.0.0	<u>Assist</u>	🔘 NAT 💿 Routing
_♦ Host Table					
L⇒ Language					OK Cancel
∃ Logout					

Removing a Multiple Subnet Routing Mode

Step 1: Find the IP Address you want to delete in Multiple Subnet menu, then click Delete button, on the right side of the service providers, click OK.

Step 2: A confirmation pop-up box will appear, click OK to delete the setting or click Cancel to discard changes.

	System > Configu	ure > Multiple Subnet			
E Dustan					
⊟ System		WAN Interface IP / Forwarding Mode	Interface	Alias IP of Interface / Netmask	Configure
■ Administration		/ Routing	LAN	168.85.88.1 / 255.255.255.192	Modify Remove
∃ Configure		/ Houting		100.00.00.17200.200.200.102	(modify) (Kentove)
_ ⇒ Setting					
_♦ Date/Time			N	ew Entry	
→ Multiple Subnet					
→ Route Table					
-⇒DHCP		Microsoft Internet E	xplorer		
→ Dynamic DNS					
_♦ Host Table		🔹 🕐 Are you sure	you want to	remove ?	
L⇒ Language					
∃ Logout		ОК	Cancel		
■ Interface					

3.1.7 Route Table

In this section, the Administrator can add static routes for the networks.

Entering the Route Table screen

Step 1. Click **System** on the left hand side menu bar, then click **Route Table** below the **Configure** menu. The Route Table window appears, in which current route settings are shown.

PLANET Networking & Communication	System > Configure > Route Table			
system	Interface	Destination IP / Netmask	Gateway	Configure
■ Administration				, and the second s
🖻 Configure		New Entry		
■● Setting		New Linuy		
_♦ Date/Time				
■ Multiple Subnet				
🗕 🕈 Route Table 🛛 🗲 🗲				
-⇒ DHCP				

Route Table functions

- Interface: Destination network, LAN or WAN networks.
- **Destination IP / Netmask:** IP address and subnet mask of destination network.
- Gateway: Gateway IP address for connecting to destination network.
- **Configure:** Change settings in the route table.

Adding a new Static Route

- **Step 1.** In the Route Table window, click the **New Entry** button.
- Step 2. In the Add New Static Route window, enter new static route information.
- Step 3. In the Interface field's pull-down menu, choose the network to connect (LAN, WAN, DMZ).

Step 4. Click OK to add the new static route or click Cancel to cancel.

	System > Configure > Route Table		
⊑ System I≢Administration	Add New Static Route		
Sconfigure	Destination IP	192.168.4.0	
_♦ Setting	Netmask	255.255.255.0	
_♦ Date/Time	Gateway	192.168.1.254	
 → Multiple Subnet → Route Table → DHCP → Dynamic DNS 	Interface	LAN	OK Cancel

Modifying a Static Route:

Step 1. In the Route Table menu, find the route to edit and click the corresponding Modify option in the

Configure field.

Step 2. In the Modify Static Route window, modify the necessary routing addresses.

Step 3. Click OK to apply changes or click Cancel to cancel it.

	System > Configure > Route Table		
l≡ System			
■ System ■ Administration	Modify Static Route		
E Configure	Destination IP	192.168.4.0	
_⇒ Setting	Netmask	255.255.255.0	
_♦ Date/Time	Gateway	192.168.1.254	
→ Multiple Subnet	Interface	LAN V	
–✦ Route Table –✦ DHCP –✦ Dynamic DNS			OK Cancel

Removing a Static Route

- **Step 1.** In the Route Table window, find the route to remove and click the corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. In the Remove confirmation pop-up box, click OK to confirm removing or click Cancel to cancel it.

PLANET Networking & Communication	System > Configure > Route Ta	able		
■ System ■ Administration	Interface	Destination IP / Netmask	Gateway	Configure
 Auministration Configure 	LAN	192.168.4.0 / 255.255.255.0	192.168.1.254	Modify Remove
-→ Setting -→ Date/Time -→ Multiple Subnet -→ Route Table			v Entry	
→ DHCP → Dynamic DNS → Host Table		Microsoft Internet Explorer Image: Are you sure you want to represent the second stress of the se	move ?	
L⇒ Language ≇ Logout I Interface		OK Cancel		

3.1.8 DHCP

In the section, the Administrator can configure DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) settings for the LAN network.

Entering the DHCP window

Click **System** on the left hand side menu bar, then to click **DHCP** below the **Configure** menu. The DHCP window appears in which current DHCP settings are shown on the screen.

	System > Configure	> DHCP						
≡ System ■ Administration	Dyr	iamic IP Addr	ess					
Configure	Sub	net	192.168.1.0	Netmask		255.255	.255.0	
L → Setting	Gate	eway	192.168.1.1	Broadcast		192.168	.1.255	
→ Date/Time								
	\checkmark	Enable DHCP	Support					
-+ Route Table		Domain Name				rex:dhcp.	.domain name)	
->DHCP		Automatically	Get DNS			1.	/	
_ ➡ Dynamic DNS		DNS Server 1		192.168.1.1	1			
➡ Host Table				192.100.1.1				
Language		DNS Server 2						
≖ Logout		WINS Server	1					
Interface		WINS Server	2		1			
Policy Object					-			
Policy		LAN Interface	e:					
Mail Security		Client IP Rang	e1	192.168.1.2	1	То	192.168.1.254]
IDP		Client IP Rang	e)		1	То]
Anomaly Flow IP		Client in Rang	62			10		
Monitor		DMZ Interface	a -					
				192.168.10.2	1	То	192.168.10.254	1
		Client IP Rang		192.168.10.2	-		192.168.10.254]
		Client IP Rang	e 2			То		
		Leased Time		24 hours				
							0	K Cancel

Dynamic IP Address functions

- Subnet: LAN network's subnet
- Netmask: LAN network's netmask
- Gateway: LAN network's gateway IP address
- Broadcast: LAN network's broadcast IP address

Enabling DHCP Support

Step 1. In the Dynamic IP Address window, click Enable DHCP Sup

Domain Name: The Administrator may enter the name of the LAN network domain if preferred.

Automatically Get DNS: Check this box to automatically detect DNS server.

DNS Server 1: Enter the distributed IP address of DNS Server 1.

DNS Server 2: Enter the distributed IP address of DNS Server 2.

WINS Server 1: Enter the distributed IP address of WINS Server 1.

WINS Server 2: Enter the distributed IP address of WINS Server 2.

LAN interface:

Client IP Address Range 1: Enter the starting and the ending IP address dynamically assigning to DHCP clients.

Client IP Address Range 2: Enter the starting and the ending IP address dynamically assigning to DHCP clients. (Optional)

DMZ interface:

Client IP Address Range 1: Enter the starting and the ending IP address dynamically assigning to DHCP clients. Client IP Address Range 2: Enter the starting and the ending IP address dynamically assigning to DHCP clients. (Optional) Leased Time: Enter the leased time for DHCP.

Step 2. Click OK to enable DHCP support.

3.1.9 Dynamic DNS

The **Dynamic DNS** (require Dynamic DNS Service) allows you to alias a dynamic IP address to a static hostname, allowing your device to be more easily accessed by specific name. When this function is enabled, the IP address in Dynamic DNS Server will be automatically updated with the new IP address provided by ISP.

	System > Configure > Dynamic D	NS		
System		Domain Name	WAN IP	Configure
□ Configure → Setting → Date/Time			New Entry	
 → Multiple Subnet → Route Table 				
 ⇒ DHCP → Dynamic DNS ← ← → Host Table 				

Click **Dynamic DNS** in the **System** menu to enter Dynamic DNS window.

The icons in Dynamic DNS window:

!: Update Status, Connecting; Update succeed; Update fail; Update fail; Domain name: Enter the password provided by ISP.

WAN IP Address: IP address of the WAN port.

Configure: Modify dynamic DNS settings. Click **Modify** to change the DNS parameters; click Delete to delete the settings.

How to use dynamic DNS:

The Multi-Homing Security Gateway provides many service providers, users have to register prior to use this function. For the usage regulations, see the providers' websites.

How to register:

Firstly, Click **Dynamic DNS** in the **System** menu to enter Dynamic DNS window, then click **Add** button on the right side of the service providers, click **Sign up**, the service providers' website will appear, please refer to the website for the way of registration.

	System > Configure > Dynamic DNS			
system	Add New Dynamic DN	S		
■ Administration ■ Configure	Service Provider :	DynDNS (www.dyndns.com) [U.S.A.]		
→ Setting	WAN IP:	Automatically WAN		
_♦ Date/Time	User Name :			
→ Multiple Subnet	Password :			
➡ Route Table ➡ DHCP	Domain Name:	, ath.cx		
-→ Dynamic DNS -→ Host Table		OK Cance		
Language	Click to li	Click to link to the website selected on the left.		

Add Dynamic DNS settings

Step 1. Click Add button.

Step 2. Click the information in the column of the new window.

Service providers: Select service providers.

Sign up: to the service providers' website.

WAN IP Address: IP Address of the WAN port.

□ Automatically : Check to automatically fill in the WAN IP.。

User Name: Enter the registered user name.

Password: Enter the password provided by ISP (Internet Service Provider).

Domain name: Your host domain name provided by ISP.

Click **OK** to add dynamic DNS or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

Wetworking & Communication Sys	tem > Configure > Dynamic DNS		
i System ≖IAdministration	Add New Dynamic DNS		
■ Aurininstration Ξ Configure	Service Provider :	DynDNS (www.dyndns.com) [U.S.A.] 🛛 😽 Sign up	
_→ Setting	WAN IP:	192.168.99.91 🗹 Automatically WAN 💌	
_⇒ Date/Time	User Name :	planet	
_♦ Multiple Subnet	Password :		
■ Route Table	Domain Name:	planetest dyndns.org 🕑	
_⇒ Dynamic DNS			
→ Host Table		OK Cancel	
_⇒ Language			

Modify dynamic DNS

Step 1. Find the item you want to change and click **Modify**.

Step 2. Enter the new information in the Modify Dynamic DNS window.

Click **OK** to change the settings or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	System > Configure > Dynamic DNS		
■ System ■ Administration	Modify Dynamic DNS		
E Configure	Service Provider :	DynDNS (www.dyndns.com) [U.S.A.] 🛛 💉 Sign up	
→ Setting	WAN IP:	192.168.99.91 🗹 Automatically WAN 💌	
_♦ Date/Time	User Name :	planet	
→ Multiple Subnet	Password :		
→ Route Table	Domain Name:	planetest dyndns.org 💌	
→ Dynamic DNS			
_⇒ Host Table		OKCa	ncel
L⇒ Language			

Remove Dynamic DNS

- **Step 1.** Find the item you want to change and click **Remove**.
- **Step 2.** A confirmation pop-up box will appear, click OK to delete the settings or click Cancel to discard changes.

PLANET				
Vetworking & Communication	System > Configure > Dynar	nic DNS		
	- Oystern & Conligure & Dynar			
■ System				
	i	Domain Name	WAN IP	Configure
⊟ Configure	\times	planetest.dyndns.org	192.168.99.91	Modify Remove
→ Setting				
_♦ Date/Time			New Entry	
→ Multiple Subnet				
→ Route Table				
-⇒DHCP		Microsoft Internet Ex	plorer 🔀	
■● Dynamic DNS		9		
_⇒ Host Table		Are you sure yo	ou want to remove ?	
L⇒ Language				
≖ Logout		ОК	Cancel	
■ Interface				

3.1.10 Host Table

The Multi-Homing Security Gateway's Administrator may use the Host Table function to make the Multi-Homing Security Gateway act as a DNS Server for the LAN and DMZ network. All DNS requests to a specific Domain Name will be routed to the Multi-Homing Security Gateway's IP address. For example, let's say an organization has their mail server (i.e., mail.planet.com.tw) in the DMZ network (i.e. 192.168.10.10). The outside Internet world may access the mail server of the organization easily by its domain name, providing that the Administrator has set up Virtual Server or Mapped IP settings correctly. However, for the users in the LAN network, their WAN DNS server will assign them a public IP address for the mail server. So for the LAN network to access the mail server (mail.planet.com.tw), they would have to go out to the Internet, then to come back through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway to access the mail server. Essentially, the LAN network is accessing the mail server by a real public IP address, while the mail server serves their request by a NAT address and not a real one.

This odd situation occurs when there are servers in the DMZ network and they are bound to real IP addresses. To avoid this, set up Host Table so all the LAN network computers will use the Multi-Homing Security Gateway as a DNS server, which acts as the DNS proxy.

If you want to use the Host Table function of the device, the end user's main DNS server IP address should be the same IP Address as the device.

Click on **System** in the menu bar, then to click on **Host Table** below the **Configure** menu. The Host Table window will appear.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	System > Config	ure > HostTable		
system ∎Administration		Host Name	Virtual IP Address	Configure
Configure		mail.planet.com.tw	192.168.10.10	Modify Remove
 ◆ Setting ◆ Date/Time ◆ Multiple Subnet ◆ Route Table ◆ DHCP ◆ Dynamic DNS 			New Entry	
.→ Host Table ← ← .→ Language				

Below is the information needed for setting up the Host Table:

- Host Name: The domain name of the server
- Virtual IP Address: The virtual IP address respective to Host Table
- Configure: modify or remove each Host Table policy

Adding a new Host Table

- Step 1: Click on the New Entry button and the Add New Host Table window will appear.
- **Step 2:** Fill in the appropriate settings for the domain name and virtual IP address.
- **Step 3:** Click **OK** to save the policy or **Cancel** to cancel.

	system > Configure > Host Table			
■ System	Add New Host Table			
■ Administration ■ Configure	Host Name	mail.planet.com.tw	(ex:www.my_domain.com)	
L→ Setting	Virtual IP Address	192.168.10.10	(ex: 192.168.100.102)	
_+ Date/Time				
⇒ Multiple Subnet				OK Cancel
→ Route Table				
-+> DHCP				
→ Dynamic DNS				
→ Host Table				
L⇒ Language				

Modifying a Host Table

- **Step 1:** In the **Host Table** window, find the policy to be modified and click the corresponding **Modify** option in the **Configure** field.
- **Step 2:** Make the necessary changes needed.
- Step 3: Click OK to save changes or click on Cancel to cancel modifications.

	System > Configure > Host Table		
■ System ■ Administration	Modify Host Table		
E Configure	Host Name	mail.planet.com.tw (ex: www.my_domain.com)	
→ Setting	Virtual IP Address	192.168.10.10 (ex: 192.168.100.102)	
_♦ Date/Time			
_♦ Multiple Subnet			OK Cancel
_♦ Route Table			
-⇒ DHCP			
→ Dynamic DNS			
_⇒ Host Table			
L⇒ Language			

Removing a Host Table

- Step 1: In the Host Table window, find the policy to be removed and click the corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.
- Step 2: A confirmation pop-up box will appear, click OK to remove the Host Table or click Cancel.

	System > Configu	ure > Host Table		
⊫ System		Host Name	Virtual IP Address	Configure
■ Administration ■ Configure		mail.planet.com.tw	192.168.10.10	Modify Remove
– ➡ Setting – ➡ Date/Time – ➡ Multiple Subnet			New Entry	
→ Route Table		Microsoft Inte	ernet Explorer 🛛 🔀	
_⇒ Dynamic DNS _⇒ Host Table		Are y	you sure you want to remove ?	
L⇒ Language ≝ Logout		ОК	Cancel	
🗉 Interface				

3.1.11 Language

Administrator can configure the Multi-Homing Security Gateway to select the Language version.

- Step 1. Select the Language version (English Version, Traditional Chinese Version or Simplified Chinese Version).
- Step 2. Click [OK] to set the Language version or click Cancel to discard changes.

3.1.12 Logout

- **Step 1.** Select this option to the device's **Logout** the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. This function protects your system while you are away.
- Step 2. Click Logout the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.
- Step 3. Click OK to logout or click Cancel to discard the change.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	System > Logout > Logout		
l≡ System			
■ Administration			
■ Configure			
⊟ Logout			
La Logout 🗧 🗲 🗲			
🗉 Interface			
🖬 Policy Object		Microsoft Internet Explorer	
🗉 Policy			
🗉 Mail Security		Are you sure you want to logout ?	
IDP		~	
🗉 Anomaly Flow IP		OK Cancel	
■ Monitor			

3.2 Interface

In this section, the **Administrator** can set up the IP addresses for the office network. The Administrator may configure the IP addresses of the LAN network, the WAN network, and the DMZ network. The netmask and gateway IP addresses are also configured in this section.

3.2.1 LAN

Entering the Interface menu:

Click on **Interface** in the left menu bar. Then click on **LAN** below it. The current settings of the interface addresses will appear on the screen.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Interface > LAN				
■ System ■ Interface		LAN Interface			
→ LAN → WAN → DMZ		IP Address Netmask	192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0		
■ Policy Object ■ Policy ■ Mail Security		Enable	✓ Ping	✓ НТТР	OK Cancel

Configuring the Interface Settings

Using the LAN **Interface**, the Administrator sets up the LAN network. The LAN network will use a private IP scheme. The private IP network will not be routable on the Internet.

IP Address: The private IP address of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway's LAN network is the IP address of the LAN port of the device. The default IP address is 192.168.1.1. If the new LAN IP Address is not 192.168.1.1, the Administrator needs to set the IP Address on the computer to be the same subnet as the Multi-Homing Security Gateway and restart the System to make the new IP address effective. For example, if the Multi-Homing Security Gateway's new LAN IP Address is 172.16.0.1, then enter the new LAN IP Address 172.16.0.1 in the URL field of browser to connect to Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

NetMask: This is the subnet mask of the LAN network. The default netmask of the device is 255.255.255.0.

Ping: Select this to allow the LAN network to ping the IP Address of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. If set to enable, the device will respond to ping packets from the LAN network.

HTTP: Select this to allow the device WEBUI to be accessed from the LAN network.

3.2.2 WAN

Entering the Interface menu

Click on Interface in the left menu bar. Then click on WAN below it. The current settings of the interface addresses will appear on the screen.

	Interface > WAN							
■ System ■ Interface	Balance Mode : A	uto 💌						
-⇒ LAN	WAN No.	Connect Mode	IP Address	Saturated Connections	Ping	нттр	Configure	Priority
→ WAN → DMZ	1	Static IP	210.66.155.90	1 🔽	 ✓ 	1	Modify	1 💌
Policy Object	2			0 😽			Modify	0 😽

Balance Mode:

Auto: CS-1000 distributes the WAN 1/2 download by proportion automatically according to the WAN download bandwidth. (For users who are using various download bandwidth)

Round-Robin: CS-1000 distributes the WAN 1/2 download bandwidth 1:1, in other words, it selects the agent by order. (For users who are using same download bandwidths)

By Traffic: CS-1000 distributes the WAN 1/2 download bandwidth by traffic. (For users who are connected to the Internet via a fixed WAN IP address)

By Session: CS-1000 distributes the WAN 1/2 download bandwidth by session. (For users who are connected to the Internet via a fixed WAN IP address)

By Packet: CS-1000 distributes the WAN 1/2 download bandwidth by packet and saturated connection. (For users who are connected to the Internet via a fixed WAN IP address)

WAN No: WAN port 1 or 2.

Connect Mode: Display the current connection mode: PPPoE, Dynamic IP Address (Cable Modem User) or Static IP Address.

IP Address: Display the current WAN IP Address.

Saturated Connections: Set the number for saturation whenever session numbers reach it, the CS-1000 switches to the next WAN port on the list. This function is only applicable for **By Session** mode.

Ping / HTTP: Display Ping/HTTP functions of WAN 1/2 to show if they are enabled or disabled.

Configure: Click Modify to modify WAN 1/2 settings.

Priority: Set priority of WAN 1/2 for Internet Access.

WAN 1/2 Interface

Using the WAN 1/2 Interface, the Administrator can sets up the WAN 1/2 network. These IP addresses are real public IP Addresses, and are routable on the Internet.

Alive Indicator Site IP: This feature is used to ping an address for detecting WAN connection status.

Service: ICMP You can select an IP address by Assist, or type an IP address manually.

Service: DNS You can select a DNS IP and Domain name by Assist, or type the related data manually.

PPPoE (ADSL User): This option is for PPPoE users who are required to enter a username and password in order to connect.

Username: Enter the PPPoE username provided by the ISP.

Password: Enter the PPPoE password provided by the ISP.

IP Address provided by ISP:

Dynamic: Select this if the IP address is automatically assigned by the ISP.

Fixed: Select this if you were given a static IP address. Enter the IP address that is given to you by your ISP.

Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth: The bandwidth provided by ISP.

Auto Disconnect: The PPPoE connection will automatically disconnect after a length of idle time (no activities). Enter in the amount of idle minutes before disconnection. Enter '0' if you do not want the PPPoE connection to disconnect at all.

Ping: Select this to allow the WAN 1 network to ping the IP Address of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. This will allow people from the Internet to be able to ping the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. If it sets to enable, the device will respond to echo request packets from the WAN 1/2 network.

HTTP: Select this to allow the device WEBUI to be accessed from the WAN 1 network. This will allow WebUI to be configured from a user on the Internet. Keep in mind that the device always requires a username and password to enter the WebUI.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Interface > WAN	
 System Interface ↓ LAN ↓ WAN ↓ DMZ Policy Object Policy Mail Security IDP Anomaly Flow IP Monitor 	WAN Interface PPPDE (ADSL User) Dynamic IP Address (Cable Modern User) Static IP Address PPTP (European User Only) Current Status Disconnected Connecting IP Address 0.0.0.0 Disconnect User Name	
	Max. Downstream Bandwidth 30000 Kbps (Max. 30 Mbps) Max. Upstream Bandwidth 30000 Kbps (Max. 30 Mbps) ✓ Service-On-Demand Auto Disconnect if idle 0 minutes (0 : means always connected) Enable Ping HTTP	ncel

For Dynamic IP Address (Cable Modem User): This option is for users who are automatically assigned an IP address by their ISP, such as cable modem users. The following fields apply:

IP Address: The dynamic IP address obtained by CS-1000 from the ISP will be displayed here. This is the IP address of the WAN 1 (WAN 2) port of the device.

MAC Address: This is the MAC Address of the device. Some ISPs require specified MAC address. If the required MAC address is your PC's, click **Clone MAC Address**.

Hostname: This will be the name assign to the device. Some cable modem ISP assign a specific hostname in order to connect to their network. Please enter the hostname here. If not required by your ISP, you do not have to enter a hostname.

Domain Name: You can specify your own domain name or leave it blank.

User Name: The user name is provided by ISP.

Password: The password is provided by ISP.

Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth: The bandwidth provided by ISP.

Ping: Select this to allow the WAN 1 network to ping the IP Address of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. This will allow people from the Internet to be able to ping the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. If it sets to enable, the device will respond to echo request packets from the WAN 1/2 network.

HTTP: Select this to allow the device WEBUI to be accessed from the WAN 1 network. This will allow WebUI to be configured from a user on the Internet. Keep in mind that the device always requires a username and password to enter the WebUI.

	Interface > WAN
System System Interface AN → WAN → DMZ	WAN Interface PPPoE (ADSL User) Dynamic IP Address (Cable Modern User) Static IP Address
Policy Object Policy Mail Security IDP Anomaly Flow IP Monitor	PPTP (European User Only) IP Address 0.0.0.0 Renew Release MAC Address 00:30:4F:44:A2:F5 Clone MAC Address Hostname Domain Name User Name (Required by DHCP+ protocol) Password (Required by DHCP+ protocol)
	Max. Downstream Bandwidth 30000 Kbps (Max. 30 Mbps) Max. Upstream Bandwidth 30000 Kbps (Max. 30 Mbps) Enable Ping HTTP

For Static IP Address: This option is for users who are assigned a static IP Address from their ISP. Your ISP will provide all the information needed for this section such as IP Address, Netmask, Gateway, and DNS. Use this option also if you have more than one public IP Address assigned to you.

IP Address: Enter the static IP address assigned to you by your ISP. This will be the public IP address of the WAN 1 port of the device.

Netmask: This will be the Netmask of the WAN 1 network. (i.e. 255.255.255.0)

Default Gateway: This will be the Gateway IP address.

Domain Name Server (DNS): This is the IP Address of the DNS server.

Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth: The bandwidth provided by ISP.

Ping: Select this to allow the WAN 1 network to ping the IP Address of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. This will allow people from the Internet to be able to ping the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. If it sets to enable, the device will respond to echo request packets from the WAN 1/2 network.

HTTP: Select this to allow the device WEBUI to be accessed from the WAN 1 network. This will allow WebUI to be configured from a user on the Internet. Keep in mind that the device always requires a username and password to enter the WebUI.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Interface > WAN		
 System Interface ↓ LAN ↓ WAN ↓ DMZ Policy Object Policy Mail Security IDP Anomaly Flow IP Monitor 	WAN Interface PPPoE (ADSL User) Dynamic IP Address (Cable Modern Static IP Address PPTP (European User Only) IP Address Netmask Default Gateway DNS Server 1 DNS Server 2 Max. Downstream Bandwidth Max. Upstream Bandwidth	User) 192.168.99.98 255.255.255.0 192.168.99.253 168.95.1.1 30000 Kbps (Max. 30 Mbps) 30000 Kbps (Max. 30 Mbps)	
	Enable	✓ Ping	HTTP OK Cancel

3.2.3 DMZ

The Administrator uses the **DMZ Interface** to set up the DMZ network. The DMZ network consists of server computers such as FTP, SMTP, and HTTP (web). These server computers are put in the DMZ network so they can be isolated from the LAN (LAN) network traffic. Broadcast messages from the LAN network will not cross over to the DMZ network to cause congestions and slow down these servers. This allows the server computers to work efficiently without any slowdowns.

PLANET Networking & Communication	Interface ≻ DMZ			
📧 System		_		
🖻 Interface	DMZ Interface Disable	*		
LAN	IP Address	0.0.0		
_⇒ WAN	Netmask	0.0.0		
L⇒ DMZ				
🗷 Policy Object	Enable	Ping	HTTP	
I Policy				
🎟 Mail Security				OK Cancel
IDP				

DMZ Interface: Display NAT Mode or TRANSPARENT Mode functions of DMZ to show if they are enabled or disabled.

IP Address: The private IP address of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway's DMZ interface. This will be the IP address of the DMZ port. If it is in NAT mode, the IP address will be a private one and cannot use the same network as the WAN or LAN subnet.

NetMask: This will be the subnet mask of the DMZ network.

Ping: Select this to allow the DMZ network to ping the IP Address of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. This will allow people from the Internet to be able to ping the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. If set to enable, the device will respond to echo request packets from the DMZ network.

HTTP: Select this to allow the device WebUI to be accessed from the DMZ network. This will allow the WebUI

to be configured from a user on the Internet. Keep in mind that the device always requires a username and password to enter the WebUI.

3.3 Policy Object

The Policy Object is the pre-setting item for Policy editing. The administrator can configure all necessary items here before he wants to configure Multi-Homing Security Gateway Policy. The contents include Address, Service, Schedule, QoS, Authentication, Content Blocking, Virtual server and VPN.

3.3.1 Address

The Multi-Homing Security Gateway allows the Administrator to set addresses of the LAN network, LAN network group, WAN network, WAN group, DMZ network and DMZ group.

What is the Address Table?

An IP address in the Address Table can be an address of a computer or a sub network. The Administrator can assign an easily recognized name to an IP address. Based on the network it belongs to, an IP address can be an LAN IP address, WAN IP address and DMZ IP address. If the Administrator needs to create a control policy for packets of different IP addresses, he can first add a new group in the LAN Network Group or the WAN Network Group and assign those IP addresses into the newly created group. Using group addresses can greatly simplify the process of building control policies.

How to use Address Table

With easily recognized names of IP addresses and names of address groups shown in the address table, the Administrator can use these names as the source address or destination address of control policies. The address table should be built before creating control policies, so that the Administrator can pick the names of correct IP addresses from the address table when setting up control policies.

3.3.1.1 LAN

Entering the LAN window

Step 1. Click LAN under the **Address** menu to enter the LAN window. The current setting information such as the name of the LAN network, IP and Netmask addresses will show on the screen.

	Policy Object > #	Address > LAN			
🗉 System					
🗉 Interface		Name	IP / Netmask	MAC Address	Configure
■ Policy Object		Inside_Any	0.0.0/0.0.0.0		In Use
∃ Address					
-⇒LAN ←←			N	ew Entry	
-→ LAN Group					
→ WAN					
-+ WAN Group					

Definition

Name: Name of LAN network address.

IP / Netmask: IP address and subnet mask of LAN network

MAC Address: MAC address corresponded with LAN IP address.

Configure: You can configure the settings in LAN network. Click **Modify** to change the parameters in LAN network. Click **Remove** to delete the settings.

In the LAN window, if one of the members has been added to **Policy** or LAN Group, the **Configure** column will show the message – In Use. In this case, you are not allowed to modify or remove the setting.

Adding a new LAN Address

Step 1. In the LAN window, click the New Entry button.

Step 2. In the Add New Address window, enter the settings of a new LAN network address.

Step 3. Click OK to add the specified LAN network or click Cancel to cancel the changes.

	Policy Object > Address > LAN			
■ System	Add New Address			
■ Interface ■ Policy Object	Name	sebastien		
∃ Address	IP Address	192.168.1.2		
–⇒ LAN	Netmask	255.255.255.255		
-⇒ LAN Group -⇒ WAN	MAC Address	00:0E:A6:0F:8B:92	Clone MAC Address	
→ WAN Group	🔲 Get static IP addres	s from DHCP Server.		
–⇒ DMZ				
L⇒ DMZ Group ⊒ Service				OK Cancel

If you want to enable **Get Static IP address from DHCP Server** function, enter the MAC Address then check the **Get Static IP address from DHCP Server**.

Modifying an LAN Address

- Step 1. In the LAN window, locate the name of the network to be modified. Click the Modify option in its corresponding Configure field. The Modify Address window appears on the screen immediately.
- Step 2. In the Modify Address window, fill in the new address.
- Step 3. Click OK to save changes or click Cancel to discard changes.

PLANET Returbing & Communication	Policy Object > Address > LAN			
≖ System ■ Interface	Modify Address			
🗏 Policy Object	Name	sebastien		
∃ Address	IP Address	192.168.1.2		
→ LAN	Netmask	255.255.255.255		
→ LAN Group	MAC Address	00:0E:A6:0F:8B:92	Clone MAC Address	
-+ WAN Group	Get static IP address f	rom DHCP Server.		
_ ♦ DMZ				
L ➡ DMZ Group				OK Cancel
■ Service				

Removing a LAN Address

- Step 1. In the LAN window, locate the name of the network to be removed. Click the Remove option in its corresponding Configure field.
- Step 2. In the Remove confirmation pop-up box, click OK to remove the address or click Cancel to discard changes.

	Policy Object > Address	s > LAN			
≖ System ≖ Interface		Name	IP / Netmask	MAC Address	Configure
Interface Policy Object		Inside_Any	0.0.0.0/0.0.0		In Use
⊒ Address		sebastien	192.168.1.2/255.255.255.255	00:0E:A6:0F:8B:92	Modify Remove
LAN Sroup WAN WAN Group WAN Group DMZ		Micro		X	
■ Service ■ Schedule ■ QoS			OK Cancel		

3.3.1.2 LAN Group

Entering the LAN Group window

The LAN Addresses may be combined together to become a group.

Step 1. Click LAN Group under the Address menu to enter the LAN Group window. The current setting

	Policy Object > A	ddress > LAN Group		
🗉 System	l .			
🗉 Interface		Name	Member	Configure
🗏 Policy Object				
⊟ Address			New Entry	
-⇒ LAN				
🗕 🕈 LAN Group 🛛 🗲 🗲				
→ WAN				
■♦ WAN Group				

information for the LAN network group appears on the screen.

Definitions

Name: Name of the LAN group.

Member: Members of the group.

Configure: Configure the settings of LAN group. Click **Modify** to change the settings of LAN group. Click **Remove** to delete the group.

In the **LAN Group** window, if one of the LAN Group has been added to **Policy**, the **Configure** column will show the message – **In Use**. In this case, you are not allowed to modify or remove the LAN group.

Name	Member	Configure
ENM	sebastien	In Use

You have to delete or pause the Group in **Policy** window, and then you are allowed to configure the LAN Group.

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
ENM	Outside_Any	ANY	1		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌

Adding a LAN Group

- Step 1. In the LAN Group window, click the New Entry button to enter the Add New Address Group window.
- **Step 2.** In the Add New Address Group window:
 - Available address: list the names of all the members of the LAN network.
 - **Selected address:** list the names to be assigned to the new group.
 - **Name:** enter the name of the new group in the open field.
- Step 3. Add members: Select names to be added in Available address list, and click the Add>> button to add them to the Selected address list.
- **Step 4. Remove members:** Select names to be removed in the Selected Address list, and click the <<**Remove** button to remove these members from Selected Address list.

PLANET Networking & Communication	Policy Object ≻ /	Address > LAN Group		
 System Interface Policy Object Address LAN LAN Group WAN WAN Group DMZ DMZ DMZ Group Schedule GoS Authentication Content Blocking Virtual Server VPN Policy Mail Security 		Add New Address Group Name: < Available address> sebastien 	Image: Constraint of the second se	< Selected address>
F IDP Anomaly Flow IP				OK Cancel

Step 5. Click OK to add the new group or click Cancel to discard changes.

Modifying a LAN Group

- Step 1. In the LAN Group window, locate the network group desired to be modified and click its corresponding Modify option in the Configure field.
- **Step 2.** A window displaying the information of the selected group appears:
 - Available address: list names of all members of the LAN network.
 - **Selected address:** list names of members which have been assigned to this group.
- Step 3. Add members: Select names in Available address list, and click the Add>> button to add them to the Selected address list.
- Step 4. Remove members: Select names in the Selected address list, and click the <<Remove button to remove these members from the Selected address list.

Click **OK** to save changes or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

	Policy Object > Address > LAN Group		
■ System ■ Interface ■ Policy Object	Modify Address Group Name:	ENM	
 Address Address An Group WAN WAN Group DMZ DMZ Group Service Schedule QoS Authentication Content Blocking Virtual Server VPN 	 Available addres sebastien 	SS> K Remove Add	< Selected address> sebastien
■ Policy ■ Mail Security ■ IDP			OK Cancel

Removing a LAN Group

- Step 1. In the LAN Group window, locate the group to be removed and click its corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. In the Remove confirmation pop-up box, click OK to remove the group or click Cancel to discard changes.

	Policy Object > A	ddress > LAN Group		
👅 System				
■ Oystenn ■ Interface		Name	Member	Configure
E Policy Object		ENM	sebastien	Modify Remove
⊟ Address				Pause
-⇒ LAN				
→ LAN Group			New Entry	
–♦ WAN				
-+ WAN Group		Microsoft Int	ernet Explorer 🛛 🔀	
–⇒ DMZ		2 Are		
► DMZ Group		Are ·	you sure you want to remove ?	
■ Service				
■ Schedule		OK	Cancel	
∎QoS				

3.3.1.3 WAN

Entering the WAN window

Step 1. Click WAN under the Address menu to enter the WAN window. The current setting information, such as the name of the WAN network, IP and Netmask addresses will show on the screen.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Address > WAN		
≖ System	Name	IP / Netmask	Configure
≡ Interface	Outside_Any	0.0.0.0/0.0.0	In Use
≡ Policy Object			
⊟ Address		New Entry	
-⇒ LAN			
-⇒ LAN Group			
-⇒WAN ←←			
-⇒ WAN Group			
-⇒ DMZ			
→ DMZ Group			
∓ Service			

Definitions

Name: Name of WAN network address.

IP/Netmask: IP address/Netmask of WAN network.

Configure: Configure the settings of WAN network. Click **Modify** to change the settings of WAN network. Click **Remove** to delete the setting of WAN network.

NOTE: In the **WAN** window, if one of the members has been added to **Policy** or **WAN Group**, the **Configure** column will show the message – **In Use**. In this case you are not allowed to modify or remove the settings.

Adding a new WAN Address

Step 1. In the WAN window, click the New Entry button.

Step 2. In the Add New Address window, enter the settings for a new WAN network address.

Step 3. Click OK to add the specified WAN network or click Cancel to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Address > WAN		
■ System	Add New Address		
■ Interface ■ Policy Object	Name	Yahoo	
S Policy Object	IP Address	202.43.195.52	
-⇒LAN	Netmask	255.255.255.255	
-⇒ LAN Group -⇒ WAN -⇒ WAN Group -⇒ DMZ L⇒ DMZ Group			OK Cancel

Modifying an WAN Address

Step 1. In the WAN table, locate the name of the network to be modified and click the **Modify** option in its corresponding **Configure** field.

- Step 2. The Modify Address window will appear on the screen immediately. In the Modify Address window, fill in new address.
- **Step 3.** Click **OK** to save changes or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

PLANET Refrecting & Communication	Policy Object > Address > WAN		
⊯ System	Name	IP / Netmask	Configure
🗉 Interface	Outside_Any	0.0.0.0/0.0.0	In Use
⊫ Policy Object	Yahoo	210.66.111.22/255.255.255.255	Modify Remove
⊒ Address			2m
-⇒ LAN		New Entry	
-⇒LAN Group			
-⇒ WAN			
-⇒WAN Group			

Removing an WAN Address

- Step 1. In the WAN table, locate the name of the network to be removed and click the **Remove** option in its corresponding **Configure** field.
- **Step 2.** In the Remove confirmation pop-up box, click **OK** to remove the address or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Address > W	/AN	
⊯ System	Name	IP / Netmask	Configure
Interface	Outside_Any	0.0.0/0.0.0	In Use
Policy Object	Yahoo	202.43.195.52/255.255.255.255	Modify Remove
 Address → LAN → LAN Group → WAN → WAN Group → DMZ → DMZ Group ⇒ Schedule 		New Entry Microsoft Internet Explorer Are you sure you want to remove ? OK Cancel	

3.3.1.4 WAN Group

Entering the WAN Group window

Step 1. Click the WAN Group under the Address menu bar to enter the WAN window. The current

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Address > WAN Group	p	
▼ System	Name	Member	Configure
∓ Interface ≔ Policy Object		New Entry	
Address → LAN			
-⇒ LAN Group -⇒ WAN -⇒ WAN Group			
→ DMZ → DMZ Group			

settings for the WAN network group(s) will appear on the screen.

Definitions:

Name: Name of the WAN group.

Member: Members of the group.

Configure: Configure the settings of WAN group. Click **Modify** to change the parameters of WAN group. Click Remove to delete the selected group.

NOTE: In the **WAN Group** window, if one of the members has been added to the **Policy**, "**In Use**" message will appear in the **Configure** column. You are not allowed to modify or remove the settings. Go to the **Policy** window to remove the setting, and then you can configure.

Adding an WAN Group

- Step 1. In the WAN Group window, click the New Entry button and the Add New Address Group window will appear.
- Step 2. In the Add New Address Group window the following fields will appear:
 - **Name:** enter the name of the new group.
 - Available address: List the names of all the members of the WAN network.
 - **Selected address:** List the names to assign to the new group.
 - Add members: Select the names to be added in the Available address list, and click the Add>> button to add them to the Selected address list.
 - Remove members: Select the names to be removed in the Selected address list, and click the <<Remove button to remove them from the Selected address list.</p>
- **Step 3.** Click **OK** to add the new group or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

RELAVET	Policy Object > Address > WAN Group		
 ■ System ■ Interface ■ Address ■ Address ■ Address ■ LAN ■ LAN Group ■ VAN Group ■ DMZ ■ DMZ Group ■ Schedule ■ QoS ■ Authentication ■ Content Blocking ■ Virtual Server 	Add New Address Group Name: Available address -> Yahoo	Remove Add	Selected address ->
■ VPN ■ Policy ■ Mail Consults			OK Cancel

Modifying a WAN Group

- Step 1. In the WAN Group window, locate the network group to be modified and click its corresponding Modify button in the Configure field.
- Step 2. A window displaying the information of the selected group appears:
 - Available address: list the names of all the members of the WAN network.
 - **Selected address:** list the names of the members that have been assigned to this group.
- Step 3. Add members: Select the names to be added in the Available address list, and click the Add>> button to add them to the Selected address list.
- Step 4. Remove members: Select the names to be removed in the Selected address list, and click the <<Remove button to remove them from the Selected address list.
- Step 5. Click OK to save changes or click Cancel to discard changes.

	Policy Object > Address > WAN Grou	p	
≖ Sys tem	Name	Member	Configure
≡ Interface	Web	Yahoo	Modify Remove
⊫ Policy Object			<u>4</u> P
⊟ Address		New Entry	
-⇒LAN			
–⇒LAN Group			
-⇒ WAN			
-⇒ WAN Group			
–⇒ DMZ			

Removing a WAN Group

- Step 1. In the WAN Group window, locate the group to be removed and click its corresponding Modify option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. In the Remove confirmation pop-up box, click OK to remove the group or click Cancel to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Address > WAN Gro	пр		
≖ System	Name	Membe	r	Configure
■ Interface	Web	Yahoo		Modify Remove
🗉 Policy Object				
⊑ Address		New Entry	1	
-⇒ LAN			·	
-⇒LAN Group				
-⇒ WAN	Micro	osoft Internet Explorer 🛛 🛛		
-⇒WAN Group	(9)			
-⇒ DMZ	3	Are you sure you want to remove ?		
→ DMZ Group				
⊞ Service		OK Cancel		
■ Schedule			1	

3.3.1.5 DMZ

Entering the DMZ window:

Click **DMZ** under the **Address** menu to enter the **DMZ** window. The current setting information such as the name of the LAN network, IP, and Netmask addresses will show on the screen.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Address > DMZ	1		
System	Name	IP / Netmask	MAC Address	Configure
Interface	BMZ_Any	0.0.0/0.0.0		In Use
 Address → LAN → LAN Group → WAN → WAN Group → DMZ → DMZ Group 		Ne	w Entry	

Adding a new DMZ Address:

- Step 1. In the DMZ window, click the New Entry button.
- Step 2. In the Add New Address window, enter the settings for a new DMZ address.

Step 3. Click **OK** to add the specified DMZ or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

PLANET Returning & Communication	Policy Object > Address > DMZ			
≡ Sys tem	Add New Address			
Interface Relieve Object	Name	Appach		
Policy Object Address	IP Address	192.168.99.96		
-⇒ LAN	Netmask	255.255.255.255		
-⇒LAN Group	MAC Address	00:0E:A6:0F:8B:00	Clone MAC Address	
–⇒WAN –⇒WAN Group	Get static IP addr	ess from DHCP Server		
-⇒DMZ				
→ DMZ Group				OK Cancel

Modifying a DMZ Address:

- **Step 1.** In the **DMZ** window, locate the name of the network to be modified and click the **Modify** option in its corresponding **Configure** field.
- Step 2. In the Modify Address window, fill in new addresses.
- Step 3. Click OK on save the changes or click Cancel to discard changes.

	Policy Object > Address	> DMZ		
≖ System	Name	IP / Netmask	MAC Address	Configure
🗉 Interface	DMZ_Any	0.0.0.0/0.0.0		In Use
≡ Policy Object	Appach	192.168.88.100/255.255.255.255		Modify Remove
⊒ Address				
-⇒LAN		New	v Entry	
-⇒LAN Group				
-⇒ WAN				
-⇒WAN Group				
-⇒DMZ				
→ DMZ Group				

Removing a DMZ Address:

- **Step 1.** In the **DMZ** window, locate the name of the network to be removed and click the **Remove** option in its corresponding **Configure** field.
- Step 2. In the Remove confirmation pop-up box, click OK to remove the address or click Cancel to discard changes.

PLANET Returning & Communication	licy Object > Address >	DMZ		
System	Name	IP / Netmask	MAC Address	Configure
Interface	DMZ_Any	0.0.0.0/0.0.0		In Use
Folicy Object	Appach	192.168.99.96/255.255.255.255	00:0E:A6:0F:8B:00	Modify Remove
-⇒LAN -⇒LAN Group		New E	Entry	
-⇒ WAN		Microsoft Internet Explorer	X	
-⇒ WAN Group -⇒ DMZ		Are you sure you want to remo		
L⇒DMZ Group ≝ Service ≝ Schedule		OK Cancel		

3.3.1.6 DMZ Group

Entering the DMZ Group window

Click **DMZ Group** under the **Address** menu to enter the **DMZ** window. The current settings information for the DMZ group appears on the screen.

	Policy Object > Address > DMZ Group		
≡ System	Name	Member	Configure
■ Interface ■ Policy Object		New Entry	
⊑ Address –⇒LAN			
–⇒ LAN Group –⇒ WAN			
-⇒ WAN Group			
→ DMZ → DMZ Group			

Adding a DMZ Group:

- **Step 1.** In the DMZ Group window, click the **New Entry** button.
- Step 2. In the Add New Address Group window:
 - Available address: list names of all members of the DMZ.
 - Selected address: list names to assign to a new group.
- **Step 3.** Name: enter a name for the new group.

- Step 4. Add members: Select the names to be added from the Available address list, and click the Add>> button to add them to the Selected address list.
- Step 5. Remove members: Select names to be removed from the Selected address list, and click the <<Remove button to remove them from the Selected address list.
- **Step 6.** Click **OK** to add the new group or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Address > DMZ Group		
¥ System Interface Policy Object Address Add	Add New Address Group Name: (-Available address -> Appach	<mark>≪Remove</mark> Add	Selected address ->
			OK Cancel

Modifying a DMZ Group:

- Step 1. In the DMZ Group window, locate the DMZ group to be modified and click its corresponding Modify button in the Configure field.
- **Step 2.** A window displaying information about the selected group appears:
 - Available address: list the names of all the members of the DMZ.
 - **Selected address:** list the names of the members that have been assigned to this group.
- Step 3. Add members: Select names to be added from the Available Address list, and click the Add>> button to add them to the Selected address list.
- Step 4. Remove members: Select names to be removed from the Selected address list, and click the <<Remove button to remove them from Selected address list.
- **Step 5.** Click **OK** to save changes or click Cancel to cancel editing.

PLANET Refuelding & Communication Pol	icy Object > Address > DMZ Group		
≖ Sys tem	Name	Member	Configure
⊯ Interface	WAE IS	Appach	Modify Remove
🖻 Policy Object			
⊒ Address		New Entry	
-⇒LAN			
-⇒LAN Group			
-⇒ WAN			
-⇒WAN Group			
-⇒ DMZ			
L⇒ DMZ Group			

Removing a DMZ Group:

- Step 1. In the DMZ Group window, locate the group to be removed and click its corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. In the Remove confirmation pop-up box, click OK to remove the group.

PLANET Ketworking & Communication	Policy Object > Address > DMZ Grou	P	
≖ System	Name	Member	Configure
▼ Interface S Policy Object S Address	WEB	Appech New Entry	Modify Remove
–⇒ LAN –⇒ LAN Group –⇒ WAN	Micro	osoft Internet Explorer 🛛 🔀	
- ⇒ WAN Group - ⇒ DMZ - ⇒ DMZ Group	2	Are you sure you want to remove ?	

3.3.2 Service

In this section, network services are defined and new network services can be added. There are three sub menus under Service which are: **Pre-defined**, **Custom**, and **Group**. The Administrator can simply follow the instructions below to define the protocols and port numbers for network communication applications. Users then can connect to servers and other computers through these available network services.

What is Service?

TCP and UDP protocols support varieties of services, and each service consists of a TCP Port or UDP port number, such as TELNET(23), SMTP(21), POP3(110),etc. The Multi-Homing Security Gateway defines two services: pre-defined service and custom service. The common-use services like TCP and UDP are defined in

the pre-defined service and cannot be modified or removed. In the custom menu, users can define other TCP port and UDP port numbers that are not in the pre-defined menu according to their needs. When defining custom services, the client port ranges from 1024 to 65535 and the server port ranges from 0 to 1023.

How do I use Service?

The Administrator can add new service group names in the **Group** option under **Service** menu, and assign desired services into that new group. Using service group the Administrator can simplify the processes of setting up control policies. For example, there are 10 different computers that want to access 5 different services on a server, such as HTTP, FTP, SMTP, POP3, and TELNET. Without the help of service groups, the Administrator needs to set up 50 (10x5) control policies, but by applying all 5 services to a single group name in the **service** field, it takes only one control policy to achieve the same effect as the 50 control policies.

3.3.2.1 Pre-defined

Entering a Pre-defined window

Step 1. Click **Pre-defined** under it. A window will appear with a list of services and their associated IP addresses. This list cannot be modified.

	Policy Object > Service > Pre-de	fined		
⊯ System				
■ Interface		TCP IMAP (143) TCP InterLocator (389)	TCP POP3 (110)	UDP TELNET (23)
⊜ Policy Object		TCF IRC (6660-6669)	TCP Real-Media (7070)	ICMP Traceroute (3,11)
∃ Address	TCP BGP (179)	TCP (1701)	UDP RIP (520)	UDP UDP ANY (Any)
⊟ Service	UDP BNS (53)	TCP LDAP (389)	TCP RLOGIN (513)	UDP UUCP (540)
- Pre-defined	FINGER (79)	TCP NetMeeting (389&1503&1720)	TCP SMTP (25)	TCP VDO-Live (7000-7010)
-+ Custom	TCP (20-21)	UDP NFS (111)	UDP SNMP (161)	TCP WAIS (210)
L⇒ Group	GOPHER (70)	TCP NNTP (119)	TCP SSH (22)	TCP WINFRAME (1494)
■ Schedule	TCP HTTP (80)	UDP NTP (123)	UDP SYSLOG (514)	TCP X-Windows (6000-6063)
Content Blocking	TCP HTTPS (443)	UDP PC-Anywhere (5631-5632)	UDP TALK (517-518)	TCP MSN (1863)
	UDP IKE (500)	ICMP PING (Any)	TCP-ANY (Any)	

Icons and Descriptions

Figur	Description
	TCP services, e.g. AFPoverTCP, AOL, BGP, FINGER, FTP, GOPHER, HTTP,
TCP	HTTPS, IMAP, InterLocator, IRC, L2TP, LDAP, NetMeeting, NNTP, POP3,
	PPTP, Real-Media, RLOGIN, SMTP, SSH, TCP-ANY, TELNET, VDO-Live,
	WAIS, WINFRAME, X-Windows, MSN, etc.
	UDP services, e.g. DNS, IKE, NFS, NTP, PC-Anywhere, RIP, SNMP,
UDP	SYSLOG, TALK, TFTP, UDP-ANY, UUCP, etc.
IGMP	ICMP services, i.g. PING, Traceroute, etc.

3.3.2.2 Custom

Entering the Custom window

Step 1. Click **Custom** under it. A window will appear with a table showing all services currently defined by the Administrator.

PLANET Networking & Communication	Policy	Object > Service > Custom				
≖ System		Service name	Protocol	Client Port	Server Port	Configure
≡ Interface						
⊫ Policy Object				New Entry		
⊞ Address						
⊟ Service						
→ Pre-defined						
- 🕈 Custom 🛛 🗲 🗲						
→ Group						

Definitions:

Service name: The defined service name.

Protocol: Network protocol used in the basic setting. Such as TCP、 UDP or others.

Client port: The range of Client port in defined service. If the number of ports entered in the two fields of Client port is different, it means that the port numbers between these two numbers are opened. If the number of ports entered in the two fields of Client port is identical, it means that the entered port number is opened.

Service port: The range of Service port in defined service.

If the number of ports entered in the two fields of Service port is different, it means that the port numbers between these two numbers are opened. If the number of ports entered in the two fields of Service port is identical, it means that the entered port number is opened.

Configure: Configure the settings in Service table. Click **Modify** to change the parameters in Service table. Click **Remove** to delete the selected setting.

NOTE: In the **Custom** window, if one of the services has been added to **Policy** or **Group**, "**In Use**" message will appear in the **Configure** column. In this case you are not allowed to modify or remove the settings. Go to the **Policy** or **Group** window to delete the setting, and then you can configure the settings.

Adding a new Service

In the **Custom** window, click the **New Entry** button and a new service table appears.

In the new service table:

- New Service Name: This will be the name referencing the new service.
- Protocol: Enter the network protocol type to be used, such as TCP, UDP, or Other (please enter the number for the protocol type).
- Client Port: enter the range of port number of new clients.
- Server Port: enter the range of port number of new servers.

The client port and server port ranges are from 0 to 65535.

- Step 1. Click New Entry to add new services.
- Step 2. Click OK to accept editing, or click Cancel.

System	Add	User Defined Service		
Interface	Serv	ice NAME :		
Policy Object	#	Protocol	Client Port	Server Port
∓ Address	1	● TCP ● UDP ● Other <mark>6</mark>	0 : 65535	0 : 0
⊒ Service	2	● TCP ● UDP ● Other <mark>0</mark>	0 : 0	0 : 0
-⇒Pre-defined	3	● TCP ● UDP ● Other <mark>0</mark>	0 : 0	0 : 0
–⇒ Custom	4	● TCP ● UDP ● Other <mark>0</mark>	0 : 0	0 : 0
L⇒ Group	5	● TCP ● UDP ● Other <mark>0</mark>	0 : 0	0 : 0
Schedule	6	● TCP ● UDP ● Other □	0 : 0	0 : 0
QoS	7	● TCP ● UDP ● Other □	0 : 0	0 : 0
Authentication	8	● TCP ● UDP ● Other □	0 : 0	0 : 0

Modifying Custom Services

- Step 1. A table showing the current settings of the selected service appears on the screen
- Step 2. Enter the new values.
- Step 3. Click OK to accept editing; or click Cancel.

	Polic	y Object > Service > (Custom			
⊯ System		Service name	Protocol	Client Port	Server Port	Configure
🗉 Interface		eDonkey	ТСР	0:65535	4661:4665	Modify Remove
≡ Policy Object						<u>_</u>
∓ Address				New Entry		
≝ Service						
→ Pre-defined						
-+ Custom						
L⇒ Group						
T Sabadula						

Removing Custom Services

- Step 1. Click its corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. In the Remove confirmation pop-up box, click OK to remove the selected service or click Cancel to cancel action.

	Policy Object > Service >	Custom			
≖ Sys tem	Service name	Protocol	Client Port	Server Port	Configure
≡ Interface	eDonkey	тср	0:65535	4661:4665	Modify Remove
🗉 Policy Object					
≖ Address			New Entry		
⊟ Service	[Ja	vaScript Applica	tion]	X	
→ Pre-defined					
-⇒ Custom		Are you sure y	vou want to remove ?		
→ Group	2				
		ОК	Cancel		

3.3.2.3 Group

Accessing the Group window

Step 1. Click **Group** under it. A window will appear with a table displaying current service group settings set by the Administrator.

	Policy Object > Service > Group		
≖ System ≖ Interface	Group name	Service	Configure
 Policy Object ■ Address □ Service 		New Entry	
-⇒Pre-defined -⇒Custom -⇒Group ← ←			

Definitions:

Group name: The Group name of the defined Service.

Service: The Service item of the Group.

Configure: Configure the settings of Group. Click **Modify** to change the parameters of the Group. Click Remove to delete the Group.

NOTE: In the **Group** window, if one of the Service Groups has been added to **Policy**. "**In Use**" message will appear in the **Configure** column. You are not allowed to modify or remove the settings. Go to the Policy window, remove the Service group first, and then you are allowed to configure the setting.

Adding Service Groups

Step 1. In the Group window, click the New Entry button.

Step 2. In the Add Service Group window, the following fields will appear:

- Available service: list all the available services.
- Selected service: list services to be assigned to the new group.

- **Step 3.** Enter the new group name in the group **Name** field. This will be the name referencing the created group.
- **Step 4.** To add new services: Select the services desired to be added in the Available service list and then click the Add>> button to add them to the group.
- **Step 5.** To remove services: Select services desired to be removed in the Available service, and then click the <<Remove button to remove them from the group.
- PLANET Policy Object > Service > Group 🗉 System Add Service Group 🗉 Interface 🗉 Policy Object 🗄 Address <-- Available service --> 📩 < — Selected service —> A ANY ⊟ Service AFPoverTCP → Pre-defined AOL BGP Custom L⇒ Group DNS **44** Remove FINGER Schedule FTP GOPHER ⊞ QoS Add HTTP Authentication HTTPS IKE **Ξ** Content Blocking IMAP **∓** Virtual Server InterLocator \pm VPN IRC 🗉 Policy 🗷 Mail Security 🗉 Anti-Attack OK Cancel 🗉 Monitor
- Step 6. Click OK to add the new group.

Modifying Service Groups

Step 1. In the Mod (modify) group window the following fields are displayed:

- Available service: lists all the available services.
- **Selected service:** list services that have been assigned to the selected group.
- Step 2. Add new services: Select services in the Available service list, and then click the Add>> button to add them to the group.
- Step 3. Remove services: Select services to be removed in the Selected service list, and then click the <<Remove button to remove theses services from the group.
- Step 4. Click OK to save editing changes.

⊯ System ≖ Interface	Group name	Service	Configure
■ Interface	1415.0		
	WEB	NetMeeting,MSN	Modify Remove
🖻 Policy Object			<u></u>
∓ Address		New Entry	
⊟ Service			
–⇒Pre-defined			
–⇒ Custom			
L⇒ Group			

Removing Service Groups

In the **Remove** confirmation pop-up box, click **OK** to remove the selected service group or click **Cancel** to cancel removing.

	Policy Object > Service :	> Group	
≖ Sys tem	Group name	Service	Configure
≡ Interface	Optional	NetMeeting,MSN	Modify Remove
⊫ Policy Object			
∓ Address		New Entry	
⊟ Service		avaScript Application]	
- ⇒ Pre-defined -⇒ Custom -⇒ Group		Are you sure you want to remove ?	
≡ Schedule ≖ QoS		OK Cancel	

3.3.3 Schedule

The Multi-Homing Security Gateway allows the Administrator to configure a schedule for policies to take affect. By creating a schedule, the Administrator is allowing the Multi-Homing Security Gateway policies to be used at those designated times only. Any activities outside of the scheduled time slot will not follow the Multi-Homing Security Gateway policies therefore will likely not be permitted to pass through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. The Administrator can configure the start time and stop time, as well as creating 2 different time periods in a day. For example, an organization may only want the Multi-Homing Security Gateway to allow the LAN network users to access the Internet during work hours. Therefore, the Administrator may create a schedule to allow the Multi-Homing Security Gateway to work Monday-Friday, 8AM - 5PM only. During the non-work hours, the Multi-Homing Security Gateway will not allow Internet access.

Accessing the Schedule window

Step 1. Click on Setting on the Schedule menu bar and the schedule window will appear displaying the active schedules.

	Policy Object > Schedule > Setting	
⊯ System	Name	Configure
■ Interface		
≡ Policy Object	New	Entry
 Address		
≖ Service		
⊟ Schedule		
L⇒ Setting		
⊒ QoS		

The following items are displayed in this window:

Name: the name assigned to the schedule

Configure: modify or remove

Adding a new Schedule

Step 1. Click on the New Entry button and the Add New Schedule window will appear.

- **Schedule Name:** Fill in a name for the new schedule.
- Period: Configure the start and stop time for the days of the week that the schedule will be active.

Step 2. Click OK to save the new schedule or click Cancel to cancel adding the new schedule.

System	Add New Sc	hedule		
Interface Policy Object	Schedule N	ame	Work-Time	
≝ Address ≝ Service		Week Day	Pe Start Time	riod Stop Time
⊒ Schedule L⇒ Setting		Monday	09:00 💌	18:00 💌
■ QoS ■ Authentication		Tuesday Wednesday	09:00 💌	18:00 💌 18:00 💌
		Thursday	09:00	18:00
≖ Virtual Server ≖ VPN		Friday Saturday	09:00 💌 Disable 💌	18:00 💌
Policy		Sunday	Disable 🔽	Disable 💌

NOTE: In setting a Schedule, the value in **Start time** must be less than the value in **Stop Time**, or you cannot add or configure the setting.

Modifying a Schedule

- **Step 1.** In the **Schedule** window, find the policy to be modified and click the corresponding **Modify** option in the **Configure** field. Make needed changes.
- Step 2. Click OK to save changes.

PLANET Networking & Communication	Policy Object > Schedule > Setting	
≖ Sys tem	Name	Configure
≖ Interface	Work-Time	Modify Remove
🖻 Policy Object		
∃ Address	New	Entry
∃ Service		
🖻 Schedule		
→ Setting		
⊒ QoS		

Removing a Schedule

Step 1. In the Schedule window, find the policy to be removed and click the corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.

Step 2. A confirmation pop-up box will appear, click on OK to remove the schedule.

	Policy Object > Schedule > Setting	
≖ Sys tem	Name	Configure
≖ Interface	Work-Time	Modify Remove
⊫ Policy Object		
⊞ Address	New	Entry
∃ Service	[JavaScript Application]	X
i Schedule ⊡	[
L⇒ Setting	Are you sure you want to remove ?	
⊞ QoS		
	OK Cancel	

3.3.4 QoS

By configuring the QoS, you can control the outbound Upstream/downstream Bandwidth.

Before to configure QoS setting, the WAN port downstream and upstream bandwidth setting must be configured first, or the QoS setting will not be available to be configured.

Configuration of QoS

Click QoS in the menu bar on the left hand side.

	Policy Object > QoS >	Setting					
≖ System	Name WAN	Downstream Bandwidth	Upstream Bandwidth	Priority	Configure		
≡ Interface							
⊫ Policy Object							
∓ Address		Ne	ew Entry				
⊞ Service							
⊞ Schedule							
L⇒ Setting → Authentication							

Definitions:

Name: The name of the QoS you want to configure.

WAN: Display WAN interface.

Downstream Bandwidth: To configure the Guaranteed Bandwidth and Maximum Bandwidth.

Upstream Bandwidth: To configure the Guaranteed Bandwidth and Maximum Bandwidth.

Priority: To configure the priority of distributing Upstream/Downstream and unused bandwidth.

Add New QoS

Step 1. Click QoS in the menu bar on the left hand side.

Step 2. Click the New Entry button to add new QoS.

	Policy Object > QoS >	Setting		
≡ Sys tem	Add New QoS			
≖ Interface	Name	FTP		
⊫ Policy Object				
⊞ Address	WAN	Downstream Bandwidth	Upstream Bandwidth	QoS Priority
⊞ Service		G.Bandwidth = 128 Kbps	G.Bandwidth = 64 Kbps	
∃ Schedule	1	M.Bandwidth = 512 Kbps	M.Bandwidth = 128 Kbps	High 💙
L⇒ Setting			F	OK Cancel
■ Authentication			-	

Definition

Name: The name of the QoS you want to configure.

Downstream Bandwidth: To configure the Guarateed Bandwidth and Maximum Bandwidth.

Upstream Bandwidth: To configure the Guarateed Bandwidth and Maximum Bandwidth.

QoS Priority: To configure the priority of distrubuting Upstream/Downstream and unused bandwidth.

Click the **OK** button to add new QoS.

Modify QoS

Step 1. In the QoS window, find the QoS you want to modify, and click Modify in the Configure column.



PLANET Networking & Communication	Policy Obje	ct > QoS :	> Setting					
≡ Sys tem	Name	WAN	Downstream Ban	dwidth	Upstream Ban	dwidth	Priority	Configure
⊯ Interface ≡ Policy Object	FTP	1	G.Bandwidth = M.Bandwidth =	128Kbps 512Kbps	G.Bandwidth = M.Bandwidth =	64 Kbps 128 Kbps	High	Modify Rei ve
 a Address a Service a Schedule a Schedule 				Ne	w Entry			
⊒ QoS L⇒ Setting								

Delete QoS

- **Step 1.** In the QoS window, find the QoS you want to change, and click **Delete** in the **Configure** column.
- Step 2. In the Delete QoS window, click OK to delete the QoS or click Cancel to discard the change.

	Policy Obje	ct > QoS	> Setting				
≖ System	Name	WAN	Downstream Bandwidth	Upstream	Bandwidth	Priority	Configure
⊯ Interface ⊫ Policy Object	FTP	1	G.Bandwidth = 128Kbp M.Bandwidth = 512Kbp			i Hidh	Modify Remove
Address Address Address Activation Activation Content Blocking			[JavaScript Application] Are you sure you want to remove OK Cancel	× ?			

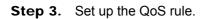
Example about how to configure QoS correctly

Step 1. Select and configure the correct connection type, including downstream/upstream bandwidth.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Interface > WAN		
ystem	WAN Interface		
Interface	PPPoE (ADSL User)		
-⇒LAN	O Dynamic IP Address (Cable M	odem User)	
-⇒WAN	Static IP Address		
L⇒ DMZ	O PPTP (European User Only)		
Policy Object			
Policy			
Mail Security	IP Address	210.66.155.90	
Anti-Attack	Netmask	255.255.255.224	
Monitor	Default Gateway	210.66.155.94	
	DNS Server 1	168.95.1.1	
	DNS Server 2		
	Max. Downstream Bandwidth	4096 Kbps (Max.	30 Mbps)
	Max. Upstream Bandwidth	672 Kbps (Max.	30 Mbps)
	Enable	✓ Ping	

Step 2. Configure the LAN host or WAN host IP address that need to filter with QoS feature. Be aware that the Netmask must set to 255.255.255.255 if you only want to configure a single IP address.

	Policy Object > Address > LAN			
🗷 System	Add New Address			
🖬 Interface		AF		
🗏 Policy Object	Name	Alice		
⊟ Address	IP Address	192.168.1.20		
–⇒ LAN	Netmask	255.255.255.255		
→ LAN Group	MAC Address		Clone MAC Address	
→ WAN Group	🔲 Get static IP address	from DHCP Server.		
■⇒ DMZ ■⇒ DMZ Group				OK Cancel



	Policy Object > QoS > S	Setting					
System Interface	Name	Downstream Band	width	Upstream Bandv	vidth	Priority	Configure
Policy Object Address	Alice_QoS	G.Bandwidth = M.Bandwidth =	128 Kbps 512 Kbps	G.Bandwidth = M.Bandwidth =	64 Kbps 128 Kbps	Middle	Modify Remov
Service Schedule				New Entry			
l QoS ■◆ Setting I Authentication							

PLANET		
Wetworking & Communication	y ≻ Outgoing	
	y. Outgoing	
🎟 System		
🎟 Interface	Comment :	
🎟 Policy Object	Add New Policy	
E Policy	Source Address	
→ Outgoing	Destination Address	Outside_Any 🔽
_⇒ Incoming	Service	ANY 💌
-+→ WAN To DMZ	Schedule	None 🔽
→ LAN To DMZ	Authentication User	None 🗸
→ DMZ To WAN	Tunnel	None V
L⇒ DMZ To LAN		
■ Mail Security	Action	
IDP	Traffic Log	Enable
Anomaly Flow IP	Statistics	Enable
🎟 Monitor	IDP	Enable
	Content Blocking	Enable
	MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
	QoS	
		OK Cancel

Step 4. Enable the QoS rule in Outgoing or Incoming Policy.

3.3.5 Authentication

By configuring the Authentication, you can control the user's access right time of LAN to WAN. The administrator can configure the authentication according to the authentication account and password. CS-1000 configures the authentication of LAN user by setting account and password to identify the privilege.

3.3.5.1 Auth Setting

The administrator can specify the port number and authentication time of authentication management system for LAN user to access WAN network.

Configuration of Authentication

Click Authentication in the menu bar on the left hand side and click Auth Setting.

	Policy Object > .	Authentication > Auth Setting				
 System Interface Policy Object Address Service Schedule QoS Authentication Auth Setting Auth Setting Auth Group RADIUS POP3 Content Blocking Virtual Server VPN 		Authentication > Auth Setting Authentication Management Authentication Port Re-Login if Idle Re-Login after user login successfully Disallow Re-Login if the auth user ha URL to redirect when authentication succ Messages to display when user login	-	82 30 0	Minutes Hours (0: means unlimited)	
≢ Policy ≢ Mail Security					OK Cancel	

Authentication Port: The port number used for user login page.

Generally, when user wants to access WAN network and the authentication (Policy -> Outgoing) is enabled, the user only need to open a web page and the User Login page will pop up.

But if user does not need to open the web page and also want to access Internet resource such as FTP, then the user has to send http request with this port number, and CS-1000 will send a User Login page for user to input user name and password.

For example, if the gateway IP address is 192.168.1.1 and authentication port is 82, user have to open a web browser and input <u>http://192.168.1.1:82</u> on the address file to have the user login page.

Re-Login if Idle: When the LAN users access to WAN network and stop to access Internet for a while, the connection will be time-out. User has to re-login again. The default time is 30 minutes.

Re-Login after user login successfully: You can limit the access time for the LAN user, when time is up LAN user will need to re-login again. If the time setting sets to 0, that means unlimited. Select **Disallow Re-login if the auth user has login** will disable this feature.

URL to redirect when authentication succeed: You can set up the default webpage, the function will force user to access the default webpage first when user passes the authentication.

Messages to display when user login: You can specify a message to display at user's login page.

3.3.5.2 Auth User

Click Authentication in the menu bar on the left hand side and click Auth User.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Authentication > Auth User	
≖ System	Authentication-User Name	Configure
≖ Interface ⊑ Policy Object	New U	ser
		
⊞ Service		
. ≝ Schedule		
⊞ QoS		
■ Authentication		
-⇒Auth Setting		
– ● Auth User		
-⇒Auth Group		
-⇒ RADIUS		
L⇒P0P3		
∓ Content Blocking		

Definitions:

Name : The name of the Authentication you want to configure.

Configure: Modify settings or remove users.

Adding a new Auth User

Step 1. In the Authentication window, click the New Entry button to create a new Auth User.

- Step 2. In the Auth-User window:
 - Auth-User Name: enter the username of new Authentication.
 - **Password**: enter a password for the new **Authentication**.
 - Confirm Password: enter the password again.

Step 3. Click OK to add the user or click Cancel to cancel the addition.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Authentication > Auth User		
≖ System	Add New Authentication-U	ser	
■ Interface	Authentication-User Name	planet	
Policy Object	Password	•••••	
I Address I Service	Confirm Password	•••••	
■ Schedule ■ QoS ■ Authentication			OK Cancel
–⇒ Auth Setting –⇒ Auth User –⇒ Auth Group			
⇒ RADIUS ⇒ POP3			

Step 4. Create an Outgoing Policy rule to allow DNS protocol pass through first, then to create another Outgoing Policy rule to enable Authentication-User Function.

	Policy > Outgoir	ng					
■ System							
Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Policy Object	Inside_Any	Outside_Any	DNS	1		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌
■ Policy	Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	2		Modify Remove Pause	то 2 💌
→ Outgoing							
_→ Incoming					New Entry		
-+ WAN To DMZ							

Step 5. Before user can access Internet, the User Login Page will pop up as following, then to input the user name and password.

User Login Page Definitions:

- **User Name**: The name of the Authentication you want to configure.
- **Password**: The input carries on the authentication the password

Authentication - Microsoft Internet	et Explorer		
File Edit View Favorites Tools He	elp		A.
🕞 Back 👻 🕑 👻 😫 🏠	🔎 Search	🚱 🔗 🌺	🗹 • 🧾 鑬 🦓
Address 🕘 http://www.yam.com.tw/			💙 🔁 Go 🛛 Links 🂙
	User Login		
User Authentication			
User Name			
Password			
			ОК
E Done			🥥 Internet 🔢

Modifying the Authentication User

- Step 1. In the Authentication window, locate the Auth-User name you want to edit, and click on Modify in the Configure field.
- Step 2. The Modify Auth-User Password window will appear. Enter in the required information:
 - Auth-User: show original authentication user.

- **Password:** show original password.
- New Password: enter new password
- Confirm Password: enter the new password again.
- Step 3. Click OK to confirm authentication user change or click Cancel to cancel it.

	Policy Object > Authentication > Auth Us	er	
 ■ System ■ Interface ■ Policy Object ■ Address ■ Service ■ Schedule ■ QoS 	Modify Authentication-U Authentication-User Na Password New Password Confirm Password		OK Cancel
 Authentication → Auth Setting → Auth User → Auth Group 			

Removing a Authentication User

- **Step 1.** In the Authentication table, locate the Auth-User name you want to edit, and click on the Remove option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. The Remove confirmation pop-up box will appear.
- Step 3. Click OK to remove that Authentication User or click Cancel to cancel.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Authentication > Auth User	
■ System	Authentication-User Name	Configure
Interface	planet	(Modify) (Remove)
■ Policy Object	Prenos	
≭ Address	New	User
≖ Service	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
≝ Schedule		
± QoS	Microsoft Internet Explorer	
■ Authentication	Are you sure you want to remo	we?
–⇒Auth Setting		
– ⇒ Auth User	OK Cancel	
-⇒Auth Group		
-⇒ RADIUS		

3.3.5.3 Auth Group

Accessing the Auth Group window

Click Authentication in the menu bar on the left hand side of the window, then to click Auth Group under it.

A window will appear with a table displaying current Auth Group settings.

	Policy Object > Authenticatio	n > Auth Group		
System	Name	Member	Radius POP3	Configr
Interface Policy Object		New Er	ntry	
∃ Address				
⊒ QoS				
□ Authentication				
– ⇒ Auth Setting				
–⇒ Auth User				
–⇒ Auth Group –⇒ RADIUS				
→ P0P3				

Adding Auth Group

Step 1. In the Auth Group window, click the **New Entry** button.

In the Auth Group window, the following fields will appear:

- **Name:** Enter the new Auth Group name.
- Available auth user: List all the available Auth User.
- Selected auth user: List Auth User to be assigned to the new group.
- **Step 2.** Enter the new group name in the group **Name** field. This will be the name referencing the created group.
- Step 3. To add new Auth User: Select the Auth User desired to be added in the Available auth user list, and then click the Add>> button to add them to the group.
- Step 4. To remove Auth User: Select Auth User desired to be removed in the Available auth user list, and then click the <<Remove button to remove them from the group.
- **Step 5.** Click **OK** to add the new group.

PLANET Retrevelling & Communication System	Policy Object > Authentication > Auth Grou	p	
 Interface Policy Object Address Service Schedule QoS Authentication → Auth Setting → Auth Group → RADIUS → POP3 Content Blocking Virtual Server 	Name: Available Authentication User planet (Radius User) (POP3 User) 	ENM → Add >>	< — Selected Authentication User → planet
			OK Cancel

Modifying Auth Group

- Step 1. In the Auth Group window, locate the Auth Group to be edited. Click its corresponding Modify option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. In the Modify Auth group window the following fields are displayed::
 - Name: Enter the new Auth Group name .
 - Available auth user: List all the available Auth User.
 - Selected auth user: List Auth User to be assigned to the new group.
- Step 3. To add new Auth User: Select the Auth User desired to be added to the Available auth user list, and then click the Add>> button to add them to the group.
- Step 4. To remove Auth User: Select Auth User desired to be removed from the Available auth user list, and then click the <<Remove button to remove them from the group.
- **Step 5.** Click **OK** to modify the Group.

	Policy Object > Authentication > Auth	I Group	
≖ System ≖ Interface	Modify Authentication-L	Jser	
 Policy Object Address Service Schedule QoS Authentication Auth Setting Auth Setting Auth Group RADIUS POP3 Content Blocking Virtual Server VPN 	Name: Available Authentication planet (Radius User) (POP3 User) 	ENM 1 User→ Add ≫	Contraction User
≖ Policy ≖ Mail Security			OK Cancel

Removing Auth Group

- Step 1. In the Auth Group window, locate the Auth Group to be removed and click its corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. In the Remove confirmation pop-up box, click OK to remove the selected service group or click Cancel to cancel removing.

	Policy Object > Authentication > Au	ith Group			
■ System	Name	Member	Radius	POP3	Configre
Interface	ENM	planet			Modify Remove
■ Policy Object					
≖ Address		New Entry			
≇ Service					
■ Schedule		ft Internet Explorer 🛛 🕅			
⊒ QoS	MICTOSO	ft Internet Explorer 🛛 🔀			
■ Authentication	?	Are you sure you want to remove ?			
– ⇒ Auth Setting	~				
– ⇒ Auth User		OK Cancel			
-⇒ Auth Group					
-⇒ RADIUS					

3.3.5.4 Radius Serve

Click **Authentication** on the left side menu bar, then click **Radius Server** below it. The following window is shown.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Authentication > RADIUS		
 System Interface Policy Object Address Service Schedule QoS Authentication Auth Setting Auth Setting Auth Group RADIUS POP3 	RADIUS Server ☑ Enable RADIUS Server Authentic RADIUS Server IP RADIUS Server Port Shared Secret □ Enable 802.1x RADIUS Server Authentic	1812	OK Cancel

Definition

- Enable RADIUS Server: Enable RADIUS Server Authentication.
- RADIUS Server IP: Enter RADIUS Server IP address.
- **RADIUS Server Port**: Enter RADIUS Server Port. The default port is 1812.
- Shared Secret: The Password for CS-1000 to access RADIUS Server.
- Enable 802.1x RADIUS Server Authentication: Enable 802.1x RADIUS Server Authentication.

3.3.5.5 POP3

Click Authentication on the left side menu bar, then click POP3 below it. The following window is shown.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Authentication > POP3		
≖ System	POP3 Server		
■ Interface	Enable POP3 Server Authentication		
¤ Policy Object	POP3 Server (IP or Domain Name)		
≖ Address	POP3 Server Port	110	
⊞ Service			
■ Schedule			OK Cancel
≡ QoS			
Authentication ■ Authentication ■			
–⇒Auth Setting			
– ⇒ Auth User			
-⇒Auth Group			
-⇒ RADIUS			
⇒ POP3			
Definition			

- **Enable POP3 Server**: Enable POP3 Server Authentication.
- **POP3 Server** : Enter POP3 Server IP address or domain name.

■ **POP3 Server Port**: Enter POP3 Server Port. The default port is 110.

3.3.6 Content Blocking

Content Blocking includes "URL", "Scripts", "P2P", "IM", "Download" and "Upload".

URL: The administrator can use a complete domain name or key word to make rules for specific websites.

Scripts: To let Popup, ActiveX, Java, Cookie in or keep them out.

P2P : Block P2P program, include "eDonkey", "Bit Torrent" and "WinMX".

IM : Block Internet Message program, include "MSN", "Yahoo Messenger", "ICQ", "QQ" and "Skype".

Download : Block download connection, audio and video transferring from web page. You can select to block which type of extension name or all type of the file.

Upload : Block upload connection, audio and video transferring from web page. You can select to block which type of extension name or all type of the file.

3.3.6.1 URL Blocking

The Administrator may setup URL Blocking to prevent LAN network users from accessing a specific website on the Internet. Any web request coming from LAN network computer to a blocked website will receive a blocked message instead of the website.

Entering the URL blocking window

Step 1. Click on URL under the Content Blocking menu bar.

Step 2. Click on New Entry.



Definition:

URL String: The domain name that is blocked to enter by Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

Configure: To change the settings of URL Blocking, click **Modify** to change the parameters; click **Delete** to delete the settings.

Adding a URL policy

- Step 1. After clicking New Entry, the Add New URL String window will appear.
- **Step 2.** Enter the URL of the website to be blocked.
- Step 3. Click OK to add the policy. Click Cancel to discard changes.
- **Step 4.** Configure Outgoing Policy rule to enable Content Blocking Function.

	Policy Object > Content Blocking	> URL	
≖ System	Add New URL String		
≖ Interface	URL String	gamble	
⊫ Policy Object			
			OK Cancel
⊞ Service			
⊞ Schedule			
± QoS			
■ Authentication			
■ Content Blocking			
-⇒ URL			
–⇒ Script			

When the system detects the setting, the Multi-Homing Security Gateway will spontaneously work.

Modifying a URL String Policy

- Step 1. In the URL window, find the policy to be modified and click the corresponding **Modify** option in the **Configure** field.
- Step 2. Make the necessary changes needed.
- Step 3. Click on OK to save changes or click on Cancel to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Content Blocking > URL	
≖ Sys tem	URL String	Configure
📧 Interface	gamble	Modify Remove
⊫ Policy Object		40
⊞ Address	New Entry	
⊞ Service		
≖ Schedule		
⊞ QoS		
Authentication		
Content Blocking		
-⇒ URL		
-⇒ Script		

Removing a URL String policy

- Step 1. In the URL window, find the policy to be removed and click the corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.
- **Step 2.** A confirmation pop-up box will appear, click on **OK** to remove the policy or click on **Cancel** to discard changes.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Content Blocking > URL	
≖ System	URL String	Configure
≡ Interface	gamble	Modify Remove
≡ Policy Object		
≖ Address	New Entry	
≆ Service	[JavaScript Application]	
≖ Schedule		
⊞ QoS	Are you sure you want to remove ?	
■ Authentication		
⊒ Content Blocking	OK Cancel	
-⇒ URL -⇒ Script		

3.3.6.2 Scripts

To let Popup, ActiveX, Java, or Cookies in or keep them out.

- Step 1: Click Scripts below Content Blocking menu.
- Step 2: Select Scripts detective functions:

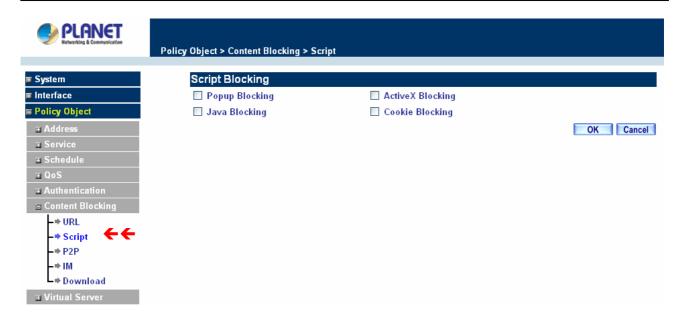
Popup Blocking: Prevent pop-up boxes from appearing.

ActiveX Blocking: Prevent ActiveX packets.

Java Blocking: Prevent Java packets.

Cookie Blocking: Prevent Cookie packets.

Step 3: After selecting each function, click the **OK** button below.



Step 4: Configure Outgoing Policy rule to enable Content Blocking Function.

When the system detects the setting, the Multi-Homing Security Gateway will spontaneously work.

3.3.6.3 P2P

- Step 1: Click P2P below Content Blocking menu.
- Step 2: Select P2P detective functions:

eDonkey Blocking: Prevent eDonkey connection built up.

Bit Torrent Blocking: Prevent Bit Torrent connection built up.

WinMX Blocking: Prevent WinMX connection built up.

Step 3: After selecting each function, click the **OK** button below.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > Content Blocking > P2P	
🗷 System	Peer-to-Peer Application Blocking	
Interface	The newest version : 1.0.0	
Policy Object	_	
■ Address	eDonkey Blocking	
■ Service	Bit Torrent Blocking	
∃ Schedule	VinMX Blocking	
⊒ QoS		
■ Authentication		OK Cancel
⊟ Content Blocking		
-+> URL		
_⇒ Script		
_ ⇒P2P ← ←		
_⇒ IM		
L⇒ Download		

Step 4: Configure Outgoing Policy rule to enable Content Blocking Function.

CS-1000 provides a feature that will auto detect the P2P program version. When it detects a new version P2P program in the LAN site, CS-1000 will connect to Internet and download the pattern to update the P2P Blocking function, and to keep the function working well to block new version P2P program. The current pattern version will display at the top side.

3.3.6.4 IM

- Step 1: Click IM below Content Blocking menu.
- Step 2: Select IM detective functions:

MSN Messenger Blocking: Select to block MSN Messenger.

Yahoo Messenger Blocking: Select to block Yahoo Messenger.

ICQ Blocking: Select to block ICQ.

QQ Blocking: Select to block QQ.

Skype Messenger Blocking: Select to block Skype.

Step 3: After selecting each function, click the **OK** button below.

PLANET Refuecting & Communication	Policy Object > Content Blocking > IM	
 System Interface Policy Object Address Service Schedule QoS Authentication Content Blocking ♦ URL ♦ Script ♦ P2P ♦ IM 	Instant Messaging Blocking The newest version : 1.0.0 MSN Messenger Blocking Yahoo Messenger Blocking ICQ Messenger Blocking QQ Messenger Blocking QQ Messenger Blocking Skype Messenger Blocking	OK Cancel
L⇒ Download		

Step 4: Configure Outgoing Policy rule to enable Content Blocking Function.

CS-1000 provides a feature that will auto detect the IM program version. When it detects a new version IM program in the LAN site, CS-1000 will connect to Internet and download the pattern to update the IM Blocking function, and to keep the function working well to block new version IM program. The current pattern version will display at the top side.

3.3.6.5 Download

- Step 1: Click Download below Content Blocking menu.
- Step 2: Select Download detective functions:

All Types Block: To block all types of the files downloading from web page. Audio and Video Types block: To block audio and video downloading from web page. Extensions Block: To block specific extensions name of the files from web page.

Step 3: After selecting each function, click the **OK** button below.

PLANET				
Networking & Communication				
	Policy Object > Content Blocking > Uplo	ad		
■ System				
■ Oystenn ■ Interface	Upload Blocking			
	All Types Blocking			
■ Policy Object				
■ Address	Extension Blocking			
■ Service	.exe	.zip	📃 .rar	
± Schedule	.iso	.bin	rpm	
⊞ QoS	.doc		.ppt	
■ Authentication	.pdf	tgz	gz	
⊟ Content Blocking	.bat		.hta	
L⇒ URL	.scr	.vb?	.wps	
_➡ Script	.pif	.msi	.com	
_⇒ P2P	.reg	.mp3	mpeg	
_⇒ IM	.mpg			
🗕 Download 🗲 🗲				
L⇒ Upload			ОКСС	anad
			UK	ancel

Step 4: Configure Outgoing Policy rule to enable Content Blocking Function.

3.3.6.6 Upload

- Step 1: Click Upload below Content Blocking menu.
- Step 2: Select Upload detective functions:

All Types Block: To block all types of the files downloading from web page.

Extensions Block: To block specific extensions name of the files from web page.

Step 3: After selecting each function, click the **OK** button below.

PLANET			
F	'olicy Object > Content Blocking > Uplo	pad	
System			
Interface	Upload Blocking		
Policy Object	All Types Blocking		
∃ Address	Extension Blocking		
± Service	.exe	.zip	🔲 .rar
Ŧ Schedule	.iso	.bin	rpm
∎ QoS	.doc		.ppt
■ Authentication	.pdf	tgz	gz
⊒ Content Blocking	.bat	.dli	🔲 .hta
_⇒ URL	.scr	vb?	.wps
_♦ Script	.pif	.msi	.com
_⇒ P2P	.reg	.mp3	mpeg
_⇒ IM	.mpg		
_♦ Download			
🗕 Upload 🗲 🗲			OKCanc
■ Virtual Server			On Canc

Step 4: Configure Outgoing Policy rule to enable Content Blocking Function.

3.3.7 Virtual Server

The Multi-Homing Security Gateway separates an enterprise's Intranet and Internet into LAN networks and WAN networks respectively. Generally, in order to allocate enough IP addresses for all computers, an enterprise assigns each computer a private IP address, and converts it into a real IP address through Multi-Homing Security Gateway's NAT (Network Address Translation) function. If a server providing service to the WAN networks is located in the LAN networks, outside users can't directly connect to the server by using the server's private IP address.

The Multi-Homing Security Gateway's Virtual Server can solve this problem. A virtual server has set the real IP address of the Multi-Homing Security Gateway's WAN network interface to be the Virtual Server IP. Through the virtual server feature, the Multi-Homing Security Gateway translates the virtual server's IP address into the private IP address of physical server in the LAN network. When outside users on the Internet request connections to the virtual server, the request will be forwarded to the private LAN server.

Virtual Server owns another feature known as one-to-many mapping. This is when one virtual server IP address on the WAN interface can be mapped into 4 LAN network server private IP addresses. This option is useful for Load Balancing, which causes the virtual server to distribute data packets to each private IP addresses (which are the real servers). By sending all data packets to all similar servers, this increases the server's efficiency, reduces risks of server crashes, and enhances servers' stability.

How to use Virtual Server and mapped IP

Virtual Server and Mapped IP are part of the IP mapping (also called DMZ, De-Militarization Zone) scheme. By applying the incoming policies, Virtual Server and IP mapping work similarly. They map real IP addresses to the physical servers' private IP addresses (which are opposite to NAT), but there are still some differences:

- Virtual Server can map one real IP to several LAN physical servers while Mapped IP can only map one real IP to one LAN physical server (1-to-1 Mapping). The Virtual Servers' load balance feature can map a specific service request to different physical servers running the same services.
- Virtual Server can only map one real IP to one service/port of the LAN physical servers while Mapped IP maps one real IP to all the services offered by the physical server.
- IP mapping and Virtual Server work by binding the IP address of the WAN virtual server to the private LAN IP address of the physical server that supports the services. Therefore users from the WAN network can access servers of the LAN network by requesting the service from the IP address provided by Virtual Server.

3.3.7.1 Mapped IP

Internal private IP addresses are translated through NAT (Network Address Translation). If a server is located in the LAN network, it has a private IP address, and outside users cannot connect directly to LAN servers' private IP address. To connect to a LAN network server, outside users have to first connect to a real IP address of the WAN network, and the real IP is translated to a private IP of the LAN network. Mapped IP and Virtual Server are the two methods to translate the real IP into private IP. Mapped IP maps IP in one-to-one fashion; that means, all services of one real WAN IP address is mapped to one private LAN IP address.

Entering the Mapped IP window

Step 1. Click Mapped IP under the Virtual Server menu bar and the Mapped IP configuration window will appear.

	cy Object > Virtual Server > Ma	pped IP	
System	WAN IP	Map To Virtual IP	Configure
Interface		New Entry	
i Policy Object			
			
			
⊒ Schedule			
⊒ QoS			
■ Authentication			
≖ Content Blocking			
⊒ Virtual Server			
-⇒Mapped IP 🗲 🗲			
–♦ Server 1			
–♦ Server 2			
-			
L⇒ Server 4			

Definition:

WAN IP: WAN IP Address.

Map to Virtual IP: The IP address which WAN maps to the virtual network in the server.

Configure: To change the setting, click Configure to modify the parameters; click delete to delete the setting.

Adding a new IP Mapping

- Step 1. In the Mapped IP window, click the New Entry button. The Add New Mapped IP window will appear.
 - WAN IP: select the WAN public IP address to be mapped.
 - Map to Virtual IP: enter the LAN private IP address will be mapped 1-to-1 to the WAN IP address.
- Step 2. Click OK to add new IP Mapping or click Cancel to cancel adding.

	Policy Object > Virtual Server > Ma	pped IP	
≖ Sys tem	Add New Mapped IP		
≖ Interface	WAN IP	Assist	
🗉 Policy Object	Map To Virtual IP		
∓ Address			
∓ Service			OK Cancel
⊞ Schedule			
± QoS			
 ⊞ Authentication			
≖ Content Blocking			
⊒ Virtual Server			
-⇒Mapped IP			
–♦ Server 1			
–♦ Server 2			
⇒ Sanvar 3			

Modifying a Mapped IP

- **Step 1.** In the **Mapped IP** table, locate the Mapped IP you want to be modified and click its corresponding Modify option in the Configure field.
- **Step 2.** Enter settings in the Modify Mapped IP window.
- Step 3. Click OK to save change or click Cancel to cancel.

PLANET Retrocting & Communication	licy Object > Virtual Server > Mapped II	þ	
⊪ System	WAN IP	Map To Virtual IP	Configure
≖ Interface	210.66.155.91	192.168.1.12	Modify Remove
🗉 Policy Object		New Entry	4m
⊞ Address			
⊞ Service			
∃ Schedule			
⊞ QoS			
Authentication			
■ Content Blocking			
⊟ Virtual Server			
-⇒Mapped IP			
–♦ Server 1			

NOTE: A Mapped IP cannot be modified if it has been assigned/used as a destination address of any Incoming policies.

Removing a Mapped IP

- **Step 1.** In the Mapped IP table, locate the Mapped IP desired to be removed and click its corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. In the Remove confirmation pop-up window, click **OK** to remove the Mapped IP or click **Cancel** to cancel.

PLANET Returning & Communication Police	y Object > Virtual Server > Mapped	IP	
System	WAN IP	Map To Virtual IP	Configure
Interface	210.66.155.91	192.168.1.12	Modify Remove
Policy Object		New Entry	
∓ Address			
∓ Service	[JavaScript Applic	ation]	
≖ Schedule	Touriset by Abbus		
∓ QoS	Are you sure	you want to remove ?	
a Authentication			
≖ Content Blocking	0	Cancel	
⊒ Virtual Server			
–⇒ Mapped IP			
–♦ Server 1			
–♦ Server 2			

3.3.7.2 Virtual Server

Virtual server is a one-to-many mapping technique, which maps a real IP address from the WAN interface to private IP addresses of the LAN network. This function provides services or applications defined in the Service menu to enter into the LAN network. Unlike a mapped IP which binds a WAN IP to a LAN IP, virtual server binds WAN IP ports to LAN IP ports.

	Policy Object > Virtual Server > Server 1			
⊯ System ⊯ Interface	Virtual Server Real IP Click here t	to configure		
≡ Policy Object	Service	WAN Port	Server Virtual IP	Configure
≖ Address				
⊞ Service				
≖ Schedule				
≖ QoS				
■ Authentication				
■ Content Blocking				
⊟ Virtual Server				
-⇒Mapped IP				
- Server 1 🗧 🗲				
→ Server 2				
-⇒ Server 3				
L⇒ Server 4				

Definition:

Virtual Server Real IP: The WAN IP address configured by the virtual server. Click "Click here to configure" button to add a real IP address.

Service: The service name that provided by the virtual server.

WAN Port: The TCP/UDP ports that present the service items provided by the virtual server.

Server Virtual IP: The virtual IP which mapped by the virtual server.

Configure: To change the service configuration, click **Configure** to change the parameters; click **Delete** to delete the configuration.

This virtual server provides four real IP addresses, which means you can setup four virtual servers at most. The administrator can select Virtual Server1/2/3/4 under Virtual Server selection in the menu bar on the left hand side, click **Server Virtual IP** to add or change the virtual server IP address; click **"Click here to configure"** to add or change the virtual server service configuration.

Configuring a Real IP for a Virtual Server

- Step 1. Click an available virtual server from Server 1/2/3/4 in the Virtual Server menu bar to enter the virtual server configuration window.
- **Step 2.** Click the **click here to configure** button and the Add new Virtual Server IP window appears and asks for an IP address from the WAN network.
- Step 3. Select an IP address from the drop-down list of available WAN network IP addresses.
- **Step 4.** Click **OK** to add new Virtual Server or click **Cancel** to cancel adding.

	Policy Object > Virtual Server > Server 1	
≖ Sys tem	Add New Virtual Server IP	
⊞ Interface	Virtual Server Real IP <u>Assist</u>	
≡ Policy Object		
⊞ Address		Canad
⊞ Service	ОК	Cancel
⊞ Schedule		
± QoS		
■ Authentication		
■ Content Blocking		
⊒ Virtual Server		
-⇒Mapped IP		
–♦ Server 1		
-⇒ Server 2		

Modifying a Virtual Server IP Address

- **Step 1.** Click the **Server 1/2/3/4** to modify the configuration under the **Virtual Server** menu bar. A new window appears displaying the IP address and service of the specified virtual server.
- **Step 2.** Click on the Virtual Server's IP Address button at the top of the screen.
- Step 3. Choose a new IP address from the drop-down list.
- Step 4. Click OK to save new IP address or click Cancel to discard changes.

	Policy Object > Virtual Server > Server 1			
⊯ System ⊯ Interface	Virtual Server Real IP 210.66,155.9	_		
E Policy Object	Service	WAN Port	Server Virtual IP	Configure
. address . a Service		New Entry		
∃ Schedule ∃ QoS				
∓ Authentication				
–⇒ Mapped IP				
–♦ Server 1 –♦ Server 2				

Removing a Virtual Server

- Step 1. Click the virtual server to be removed in the corresponding Virtual Server option under the Virtual Server menu bar. A new window displaying the virtual server's IP address and service appears on the screen.
- Step 2. Click the Virtual Server's IP Address button at the top of the screen.
- Step 3. Delete the IP address.
- Step 4. Click OK to remove the virtual server.

	Policy Object > Virtual Server > Server 1		
⊯ System	Add New Virtual Server IP		
≖ Interface	Virtual Server Real IP	<u>Assist</u>	
⊫ Policy Object			
 			
≖ Service			OK Cancel
≖ Schedule			
⊞ QoS			
■ Authentication			
⊟ Virtual Server			
-⇒Mapped IP			
–⇒ Server 1			
→ Server 2			

Adding New Virtual Server Service Configuration

- **Step 1.** Select Virtual Server in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select Server 1/2/3/4 sub-selections.
- Step 2. In Server 1/2/3/4 Window, click "New Entry" button.
- **Step 3.** Enter the parameters in the Virtual Server Configuration column.

	Policy Object > Virtual Server > Serve	r1
⊯ Sy stem	Virtual Server Configurati	on
🗉 Interface	Virtual Server Real IP	210.66.155.91
🖻 Policy Object	Service	HTTP (80)
∓ Address	External Service Port	80
⊞ Service	Load Balance Server	Server Virtual IP
⊞ Schedule	1	192.168.1.20
<u>∎</u> QoS	2	192.168.1.21
	3	192.168.1.22
	4	192.168.1.23
-⇒Mapped IP -⇒Server 1 -⇒Server 2		OK Cancel

- Virtual Server Real IP: displays the WAN IP address assigned to the Virtual Server
- Service (Port): select the service from the pull down list that will be provided by the Real Server (Load Balance Server).
- External Service Port: Input the port number that the virtual server will use. Changing the Service will change the port number to match the service.
- Load Balance Server: The internal server IP address mapped by the virtual server. Four computer IP addresses can be set at most, and the load can be maintained in a balance by round robin algorithm.

Click **OK** to execute adding new virtual server service, or click **Cancel** to discard adding.

NOTE:

1. Remember to configure the service items of virtual server before you configure Policy, or the service names will not be shown in Policy.

2. The services in the drop-down list are all defined in the Pre-defined and Custom section of the **Service** menu.

Modifying the Virtual Server configurations

- **Step 1.** In the Virtual Server window's service table, locate the name of the service desired to be modified and click its corresponding Modify option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. In the Virtual Server Configuration window, enter the new settings.
- **Step 3.** Click **OK** to save modifications or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

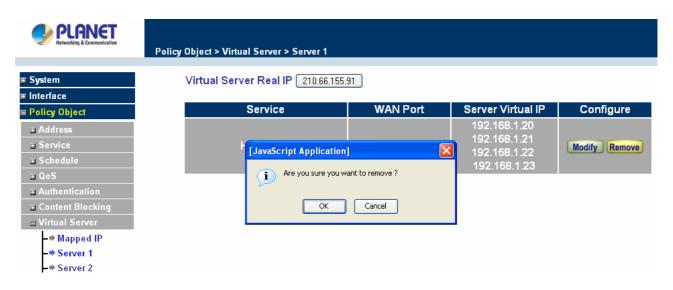
	Policy Object > Virtua	Il Server > Server 1			
⊯ System ⊯ Interface	Virtual Serve	er Real IP 210.66.155.	91		
⊫ Policy Object		Service	WAN Port	Server Virtual IP	Configure
Address Address Service Characteristics Characteristics	۲	ITTP (80)	80	192.168.1.20 192.168.1.21 192.168.1.22 192.168.1.23	Modify Remove
QoS Authentication Content Blocking Virtual Server Apped IP Server 1 Server 2			New Entry		

Click **OK** to execute the change of the virtual server, or click **Cancel** to discard changes.

NOTE: If the destination Network in Policy has set a virtual server, it will not be able to change or configure this virtual server, you have to remove this configuration of Policy, and then you can execute the modification or configuration.

Removing the Virtual Server service

- **Step 1.** In the Virtual Server window's service table, locate the name of the service desired to be removed and click its corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.
- Step 2. In the Remove confirmation pop-up box, click **OK** to remove the service or click **Cancel** to cancel removing.



NOTE: If the destination Network in Policy has set a virtual server, it will not be able to change or configure this virtual server unless you have already removed this configuration of Policy.

3.3.8 VPN

The CS-1000 adopts VPN to set up safe and private network service, and combine the remote Authentication system in order to integrate the remote network and PC of the enterprise. It also provides the remote users a safe encryption way to have best efficiency and encryption when delivering data. CS-1000 provides two kinds of VPN service and the PPTP client.

IPSec Autokey: The system manager can create a VPN connection using Autokey IKE. Autokey IKE (Internet Key Exchange) provides a standard method to negotiate keys between two security gateways. It also can set up IPSec Lifetime and Preshared Key of the CS-1000.

PPTP Server: The System Manager can set up VPN-PPTP Server functions at CS-1000 in this chapter.

PPTP Client: The System Manager can set up VPN-PPTP Client functions at CS-1000 in this chapter.

Trunk: To define local and remote VPN device with related information, it also can be configured to enable VPN Trunk function. **Trunk** entry must be selected in **Policy** to submit the further function to the VPN traffic.

What is New?

CS-1000 isolates the **Trunk** setting in order to allow **Policy** rule controlling VPN traffic. So user can filter the VPN packets with **QoS**, **IDP** rule, and record the connection in **Traffic Log** or **Statistic**. Hence, to set up a **Virtual Private Network** (VPN), you need to configure CS-1000 with following setting:

- 1. Configure IPSec Autokey for the encryption and authentication or PPTP Server/Client setting.
- 2. Configure Trunk for the information of local and remote VPN device.
- 3. Configure Policy rule to combine VPN traffic with QoS, IDP and the other function.

3.3.8.1 IPSec Autokey

This chapter describes steps to create a VPN connection using Autokey IKE. Autokey IKE (Internet Key Exchange) provides a standard method to negotiate keys between two security gateways. For example, with two Multi-Homing Security Gateway devices, IKE allows new keys to be generated after a set amount of time has passed or a certain threshold of traffic has been exchanged.

Accessing the Autokey IKE window

Click **IPSec Autokey** under the VPN menu to enter the **IPSec Autokey** window. The **IPSec Autokey** table displays current configured VPNs.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > VPI	N > IPSec Autokey			
≖ System ≖ Interface	i.	Name	Gateway IP	IPSec Algorithm	Configure
■ Policy Object ■ Address			New	Entry	
■ Service ■ Schedule					
■ QoS ■ Authentication					
Content Blocking Virtual Server					
I VPN ↓ → IPSec Autokey					

The fields in the IPSec Autokey window are:

- Name: The VPN name to identify the VPN tunnel definition. The name must be different with Trunk name and the other IPSec rule name.
- WAN: The specific WAN port to be configured as VPN tunnel.
- Gateway IP: The other side WAN interface IP address of VPN Gateway.
- IPSec Algorithm: The display the Algorithm way.
- **Configure:** Modify and Delete.

Adding the Autokey IKE

Step 1: Click the New Entry button and the IPSec Autokey window will appear. It divides into two parts of the setting, Necessary Item and Optional Item.

cy Object > VPN > IPSec Autokey Necessary Item Name WAN interface To Destination Image: Provide Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name Image: Provide Gateway or Client Dynamic IP Authentication Method Preshared Key Encapsulation	♥ WAN 1 ♥ WAN 2
Name WAN interface To Destination Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name Fixed IP or Domain Name Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP Authentication Method Preshared Key	
Name WAN interface To Destination Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name Fixed IP or Domain Name Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP Authentication Method Preshared Key	
WAN interface To Destination Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP Authentication Method Preshared Key	
To Destination Constraint of the second sec	
 Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP Authentication Method Preshared Key 	Preshare V
Fixed IP or Domain Name Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP Authentication Method reshared Key	Preshare V
Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP Authentication Method Preshared Key	Preshare V
Authentication Method Preshared Key	Preshare V
Preshared Key	Preshare
Encapsulation	
ISAKMP Algorithm	
ENC Algorithm	DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
Group	GROUP 1 🗸
IPSec Algorithm	
Data Encryption + Authentication	
	DES 💌
	MD5 V
	MD3 M
	NO-PFS 💙
ISAKMP Lifetime	3600 Seconds
IPSec Lifetime	28800 Seconds
Mode	● Main mode ● Aggressive mode
My ID	
GRE Remote IP	
	ENC Algorithm AUTH Algorithm Group IPSec Algorithm Data Encryption + Authentication ENC Algorithm AUTH Algorithm AUTH Algorithm AUTH Algorithm Perfect Forward Secrecy ISAKMP Lifetime IPSec Lifetime Mode My ID Peer ID GRE.NPSec GRE.Local IP

OK Cancel

Step 2: Configure Necessary Item paremeters.

Name: Specify a name for the VPN rule.

WAN interface: Select WAN 1 or WAN 2 to be the WAN port of VPN connection.

To Destination:

- Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name: Specify the fixed IP address or domain name of the remote side VPN gateway.
- Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP: Select Remote Gateway or Client if there is only one user or device in remote site and dials up to Internet with PPPoE or cable modem.

Preshared Key: The IKE VPN must be defined with a Preshared Key.

Encapsulation

ISAKMP Algorithm

■ENC Algorithm: ESP (Encapsulating Security Payload) provides security for the payload (data) sent through the VPN tunnel. Generally, you will want to enable both Encryption and Authentication. The available encryption algorithms including: 56 bit DES-CBC, 168-bit 3DES-CBC, AES 128-bit, AES 192-bit or AES 256-bit encryption algorithm. The default algorithm 56 bit DES-CBC.

AUTH Method: Authentication Method. Selects MD5 (128-bit hash) or SHA-1 (160-bit hash) authentication algorithm. In general, SHA-1 is more secured than MD5. The default algorithm is MD5.

■ Group: Selects Group 1 (768-bit modulus), Group 2 (1024-bit modulus) or Group 5 (1536-bit modulus). The larger the modulus, the more secure the generated key is. However, the larger the modulus, the longer the key generation process takes. Both side of VPN tunnels must agree to use the same group. The default algorithm is Group 1.

IPSec Algorithm: Select Data Encryption + Authentication or Authentication Only.

Data Encryption + Authentication

- Encryption Algorithm: Selects 56 bit DES-CBC, 168-bit 3DES-CBC, AES 128-bit, AES 192-bit or AES 256-bit encryption algorithm. The default algorithm is 56 bit DES-CBC.
- Authentication Algorithm: Selects MD5 (128-bit hash) or SHA-1 (160-bit hash) authentication algorithm. In general, SHA-1 is more secured than MD5. The default algorithm is MD5.

Authentication Only: Select this function the IPSec Algorithm will only be anthenticated with preshared key.

Step 3: Configure Optional Item paremeters if necessary.

- Perfect Forward Secrecy: Select Group 1, Group 2 or Group 5 to enhances security by changing the IPsec key at regular intervals, and ensuring that each key has no relationship to the previous key. The default is NO-PFS.
- ISAKMP Lifetime: New keys will be generated whenever the lifetime of the old keys is exceeded. The Administrator may enable this feature if needed and enter the lifetime in seconds to re-key. The default is 3600 seconds (one hours). Selection of small values could lead to frequent re-keying, which could affect performance.

- IPSec Lifetime: New keys will be generated whenever the lifetime of the old keys is exceeded. The Administrator may enable this feature if needed and enter the lifetime in seconds to re-key. The default is 28800 seconds (eight hours). Selection of small values could lead to frequent re-keying, which could affect performance.
- Mode: Select Main mode or Aggressive mode algorithm.
- My ID/Peer ID: My ID and Peer ID are optional parameters. If we choose to enter My ID/ Peer ID, they couldn't be the same. For instance, My ID is 11.11.11.11 and Peer ID is 22.22.22.22. If you want to use number or text, add @ in the front, for instance, @123A and @abcd123.
- GRE/IPSec: Select GRE/IPSec (Generic Routing Encapsulation) packet seal technology. You may enter IP to be identified for both VPN gateways. The GRE/IPsec IP address can not set as the same as CS-1000's WAN or LAN IP subnet.
- Dead Peer Detection Retry times Timeout Second: CS-1000 will check the VPN tunnel status according to this configuration, when CS-1000 does not receive the response, it will stops the VPN connection and keep detecting the VPN status in order to revive the VPN connection. Retry 0 times means to disable the function.

For the complete VPN setting, you can refer to the example for more detail information.

3.3.8.2 PPTP Server

This function allows the remote client dialup to your local network and access local resources by PPTP (Point to Point Tunnel Protocol) client software.

Entering the PPTP Server window: Select VPN → PPTP Server.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > VPN > PPTP Server			
■ System	PPTP Server(Disable):			
■ Interface				
🗏 Policy Object	Client IP Range : 192.238.6.1-254 Modify			
≝ Address				
	i User Name	Client IP	Uptime	Configure
∎QoS		New Entry		
■ Authentication				
■ Content Blocking				
I VPN				
L⇒ IPSec Autokey				
-→ PPTP Server 🗧 🗲				
→ PPTP Client				
L⇒ Tunnel				

- **PPTP Server** : Click **Modify** to select Enable or Disable.
- Client IP Range: Display the IP addresses range for PPTP Client connection.
- User Name : Displays the PPTP Client user's name for authentication.
- **Client IP** : Displays the PPTP Client's IP address for authentication.

- Uptime : Displays the connection time between PPTP Server and Client.
- Configure : Click Modify to modify the PPTP Client settings or click Remove to remove the item.

Modifying PPTP Server Design

- Step 1. Select VPN→PPTP Server.
- Step 2. Click Modify after the Client IP Range.
- **Step 3.** In the **Modify** Server Design Window, enter appropriate settings.

PLANET Networking & Communication	Policy Object > VPN > PPTP Server
🗷 System	Modify Server Design
🗉 Interface	
🗏 Policy Object	O Disable PPTP
⊞ Address	
■ Service	Enable PPTP
⊞ Schedule	Encryption
±QoS	Client IP Range : 192.185.190.1 254
■ Authentication	Allow remote client to connect to internet.
■ Content Blocking	
E VPN	Auto-Disconnect if idle 0 minutes (0: means always connected)
→ IPSec Autokey	Echo-Request Retry 4 times Timeout 30 Second (Retry 0 : means disable)
→ PPTP Server	
→ PPTP Client	OK Cancel
Trunk	

- **Disable PPTP:** Check to disable PPTP Server.
- Enable PPTP: Check to enable PPTP Server.
 - Encryption: the default is set to disabled.
 - **Client IP Range:** Enter the IP range allocated for PPTP Clients when they connect to the PPTP server.
- Allow remote client to connect to Internet: Check to allow remote PPTP client accessing Internet via PPTP tunnel.
- Auto-Disconnect if idle minutes: Configure this device to disconnect to the PPTP Server when there is no activity for a predetermined period of time. To keep the line always connected, set the number to 0.
- Echo-Request Retry times Timeout Second: CS-1000 will check the VPN tunnel status according to this configuration, when CS-1000 does not receive the response, it will stops the VPN connection and keep detecting the VPN status in order to revive the VPN connection. Retry 0 times means to disable the function.

Step 4. Click OK to save modifications or click Cancel to cancel modifications

Adding PPTP Server

Step 1. Select VPN→PPTP Server. Click New Entry.

- Step 2. Enter appropriate settings in the following window.
 - User name: Specify the PPTP client. This should be unique.
 - Password: Specify the PPTP client password.
 - Client IP assigned by:
 - 1. IP Range: check to enable auto-allocating IP for PPTP client to connect.
 - 2. Fixed IP: check and enter a fixed IP for PPTP client to connect.

PLANET Retworking & Communication		
	Policy Object > VPN > PPTP Server	
🗷 System		
Interface	Add New PPTP Server	
E Policy Object	User Name :	
. ■ Address	Password :	
■ Service	Client IP assigned by	
■ Schedule	• IP Range	
∎ QoS	• Fixed IP :	
Authentication	Fixed IP .	
■ Content Blocking		
		OK Cancel
I VPN		
→ IPSec Autokey		
-		
→ PPTP Client		
L⇒ Tunnel		

Step 3. Click OK to save modifications or click Cancel to cancel modifications.

Modifying PPTP Server

- **Step 1.** Select **VPN**→**PPTP Server**.
- Step 2. In the PPTP Server window, find the PPTP server that you want to modify. Click **Configure** and click **Modify**.

Step 3. Enter appropriate settings.

PLANET							
Networking & Commanication	Policy Object > VPN > PPT	^{>} Server					
■ System	PPTP Serve	r (Enable, Encryption:	ON 1 :				
■ Interface	Client IP Range : 192.238.6.1-254 Modify						
■ Policy Object	Cilcric II True	ige : 102.200.0.1-204	wouny				
I Address		User Name	Client IP	Uptime	Confirmer		
■ Service				Opume	Configure		
■ Schedule		planet	0.0.0		Modify Remove		
≖ QoS					∇		
■ Authentication				New Entry			
■ Content Blocking							
∎ Virtual Server							
I VPN							
→ IPSec Autokey							
→ PPTP Server							
→ PPTP Client							
L⇒ Tunnel							

Step 4. Click OK to save modifications or click Cancel to cancel modifications

Removing PPTP Server

- Step 1. Select VPN → PPTP Server.
- **Step 2.** In the **PPTP Server** window, find the PPTP server that you want to modify. Click **Configure** and click **Remove**.
- Step 3. Click OK to remove the PPTP server or click Cancel to exit without removing.

	Policy Object > VPN > P	PTP Server			
≢ System ≢ Interface ■ Policy Object ≇ Address		erver (Enable, Encryption: PRange : 192.238.6.1-254			
± Service	- i - i	User Name	Client IP	Uptime	Configure
■ Schedule		planet	0.0.0.0		Modify Remove
QoS Authentication Content Blocking Virtual Server VPN PTP Server PTP Client Tunnel		Are	ternet Explorer e you sure you want l X Cancel	co remove ?	

3.3.8.3 PPTP Client

This function allows the Multi-Homing Security Gateway dial-up to remote PPTP server and accesses the network resources on remote network.

Entering the PPTP Client window

Step) 1 .	Select VPN → PPTP Client	

	Policy Object > VPN > PPTP Client				
🗷 System					
■ Interface	PPTP Client :				
E Policy Object	i User Name	Server IP or Domain Name	Encryption	Uptime	Configure
∎ Address					
± Service		New Entry			
⊞ Schedule					
∎ QoS					
Authentication					
■ Content Blocking					
S VPN					
-+ IPSec Autokey					
■● PPTP Server					
_⇒ PPTP Client					
L⇒ Tunnel					

- User Name : Displays the PPTP Client user's name for authentication.
- Server IP or Domain Name : Displays the PPTP Server's IP address or Domain name.
- Encryption : Displays the PPTP Client Encryption ON or OFF.
- Uptime : Displays the connection time between PPTP Server and Client.
- Configure : Click Modify to modify the PPTP Client settings or click Remove to remove the item.

Adding a PPTP Client

Step 1. Select VPN→PPTP Client.

	Policy Object > VPN > PPTP Client		
■ System	Add New PPTP Client		
■ Interface ■ Policy Object	User Name :	planet	
I Address	Password :	••••	
■ Service	Server IP or Domain Name :	61.20.30.40 V Er	cryption
∃ Schedule			
≇ QoS	NAT(Connect to Windows PPTP	Server)	
■ Authentication			
■ Content Blocking			OK Canad
' Virtual Server			OK Cancel
I VPN			
→ IPSec Autokey			
→ PPTP Server			
- → PPTP Client			
L⇒ Tunnel			

Step 2. Configure the parameters.

- **User name:** Specify the PPTP client. This should be unique.
- **Password:** Specify the PPTP client password.
- Server IP or Domain Name: Enter the PPTP Server's IP address.
- **Encryption:** Enable or Disabled the Encryption.
- WAN interface: Check to select WAN interface to connect PPTP server.
- NAT (Connect to Windows PPTP Server): Select this function to setup the connection with PPTP VPN Client of CS-1000 and Windows PPTP Server.

Modifying PPTP Client

- Step 1. Select VPN → PPTP Client.
- Step 2. In the PPTP Client window, find the PPTP server that you want to modify and click Modify.
- Step 3. Enter appropriate settings.

	Policy Object > VPN >	PPTP Client				
⊯ System						
🗉 Interface	PPTP C	lient :				
Policy Object	- i -	User Name	Server IP or Domain Name	Encryption	Uptime	Configure
≖ Address		planet		ON		Modify Remove
E Service						4''')
∃ Schedule			New Er	ntry		
 ⊒ QoS						
■ Authentication						
■ Content Blocking						
I VPN						
■● IPSec Autokey						
■● PPTP Server						
→ PPTP Client						
L						

Step 4. Click OK to save modifications or click Cancel to cancel modifications

Removing PPTP Client

Step 1. Select VPN→PPTP Client.

Step 2. In the PPTP Client window, find the PPTP client that you want to modify and click Remove.

Step 3. Click **OK** to remove the PPTP client or click **Cancel** to exit without removal.

PLANET						
Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > VPN > P	PTP Client				
📧 System						
🗉 Interface	PPTP CI	ient :				
Policy Object	i - i	User Name	Server IP or Domain Name	Encryption	Uptime	Configure
∃ Address		planet	61.20.30.40	ON		Modify Remove
Service						
± Schedule			New E	ntry		
∎ QoS			and Internet Fundament			
■ Authentication		MICT	osoft Internet Explorer	×		
■ Content Blocking		?	Are you sure you want to remov	. 7		
■ Virtual Server		9	Are you sure you want to remov	.		
I VPN						
■ IPSec Autokey			OK Cancel			
→ PPTP Server						
→ PPTP Client						
L⇒ Tunnel						

3.3.8.4 Trunk

This function allows to be configured the related information for local and remote VPN device, then to select the **Trunk** entry in **Policy** rule for combining the further function.

Entering the Trunk window

```
Step 1. Select VPN→Trunk.
```

📣 PLANET						
Vetworking & Communication	Policy Object >	VPN > Tunnel				
System		Name	Source Subnet	Destination Subnet	IPSec / PPTP	Configure
Interface		Name	Source Sublet	Destination Subnet	IFOULTFIF	Conligure
■ Policy Object				New Color		
± Address				New Entry		
± Service						
∃ Schedule						
∎QoS						
Authentication						
■ Content Blocking						
I VPN						
→ IPSec Autokey						
→ PPTP Server						
→ PPTP Client						
L. → Tunnel						

Step 2. Configure the parameters

- Name: Specify the Trunk name. This should be unique and can not be the same as the name of IPSec Autokey rule.
- **Source Subnet:** Specify the source LAN network subnet.
- **Destination Subnet:** Specify the destination LAN network subnet.
- Tunnel: Indicate the Tunnel type for IPSec or PPTP.
- Configure : Click Modify to modify the Trunk settings, Pause to stop the VPN tunnel, or Remove to remove the item.

Adding a Trunk

Step 1. Select VPN→Tunnel.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy Object > VPN > Tunnel		
⊯ System ⊯ Interface			
🖻 Policy Object	New Entry Tunnel		
■ Address	Name	IPSecTunnel	
Service	From Source	💿 lan 💿 dmz	
	From Source Subnet / Mask	192.168.1.0	/ 255.255.255.0
≇ QoS	To Destination		
■ Authentication	To Destination Subnet / Mask	192.168.0.0	/ 255.255.255.0
■ Content Blocking	Remote Client		
	IPSec / PPTP Setting	CS500	~
I VPN	Keep alive IP :	192.168.0.1	
→ IPSec Autokey		132.100.0.1	
■● PPTP Server	Show remote Network Neighborhood		
■● PPTP Client			
L Tunnel			OK Cancel
🗷 Policy			

Step 2. Configure the parameters

Name: Specify the Trunk name. This should be unique and can not be the same as the name of IPSec Autokey rule.

- From Source: Specify the VPN source to LAN or DMZ site.
- From Source Subnet / Mask: Specify the source's LAN network subnet and Mask.
- To Destination:
 - **To Destination Subnet / Mask:** Specify the destination LAN network subnet and Mask.
 - **Remote Client:** Select **Remote Client** if there is only one user and dials up to Internet with PPPoE or cable modem.
- Tunnel:
 - Add VPN tunnel: Select the VPN tunnel you want to add in Available Tunnel, and click the Add>> button to add them to the Select Tunnel.
 - **Remove VPN tunnel:** Select the VPN tunnel you want to remove in **Select Tunnel**, and click the **Remove>>** button to remove them to the **Available Tunnel**.
- Keep Alive IP: Specify Remote Gateway's LAN IP address to keep alive the VPN tunnel
- Show remote Network Neighborhood: Select to show the remote Network Neighborhood.

Modifying a Trunk

- Step 1. Select VPN → Trunk.
- **Step 2.** In the **Trunk** window, find the Trunk that you want to modify and click **Modify**.
- Step 3. Enter appropriate settings.

	Folicy Object >	VPN > Tunnel				
System	i	Name	Source Subnet	Destination Subnet	IPSec / PPTP	Configure
I Interface						_
Policy Object	삊.					Modify Ren ve
∎ Address ■ Service						Pause
Schedule						
■ Schedule ■ QoS			[New Entry		
Authentication			-			
Content Blocking						
Virtual Server						
VPN						
-→ IPSec Autokey						
■ PPTP Server						
■● PPTP Client						
→ Tunnel						

Removing Trunk

- **Step 1.** Select VPN→Trunk.
- Step 2. In the Trunk window, find the Trunk that you want to remove and click Remove.

PLANET Networking & Communication						
	Policy Object ≻ \	/PN ≻ Tunnel				
System						
Interface	i i	Name	Source Subnet	Destination Subnet	IPSec / PPTP	Configure
Policy Object						Modify
± Address	– 믣,					Remove
± Service						Pause
∎ Schedule			_			
∎ QoS				New Entry		
Authentication		Microsoft	i Internet Explorer			
■ Content Blocking		2		ITOC - Turnell D		
Virtual Server		\checkmark	Are you sure you want to remove	ve ipsectunnel /		
E VPN				_		
■ IPSec Autokey			OK Cancel			
-						
-+ PPTP Client						
L⇒ Tunnel						

Click OK to remove the Trunk or click Cancel to exit without removal.

Pausing a Trunk

Step 1. Select VPN -> Trunk.

Step 2. In the Trunk window, find the Trunk that you want to modify and click Pause.

PLANET Networking & Communication	Policy Object > 1	/PN > Tunnel				
stem		Name	Source Subnet	Destination Subnet	IPSec / PPTP	Configure
terface		Nume		Destination obsiter	ii Oct / I I II	Modify
licy Object	삍.	IPSecTunnel	192.168.1.0	192.168.0.0	CS500	Remove
ddress			132.100.1.0			Pause
ervice						[rause]
chedule				New Entry		
)oS		Microsoft Inter				
Authentication		microsoft miter	net Explorer			
Content Blocking		Are you	ı sure you want to pause ? This	entry will not be effective		
/irtual Server			i sare you want to public ? This	chery will not be chrocave.		
/PN						
IPSec Autokey			OK Cancel			
PPTP Server						
PPTP Client						
Tunnel						

Step 3. When Trunk setting is paused, you will be able to change the VPN setting without to remove the Trunk setting first.

There are 5 examples of VPN setting.

- **Example 1.** Create a VPN connection between two Multi-Homing Security Gateways.
- Example 2. Create a VPN connection between the Multi-Homing Security Gateway and Windows XP Professional VPN Client.
- **Example 3.** Create a VPN connection between two Multi-Homing Security Gateways using Aggressive mode Algorithm (3DES and MD5), and data encryption for IPSec Algorithm (3DES and MD5)
- Example 4. Create a VPN trunk connection between CS-1000 (Company A) and CS-1000 (Company B), using ISAKMP Algorithm (3DES and MD5), data encryption for IPSec Algorithm (3DES and MD5) and GRE.

Example 5. Create a VPN connection between Multi-Homing Security Gateway and PLANET VRT-311 VPN Router.

Example 1. Create a VPN connection between two Multi-Homing Security Gateways.

Preparation Task:

Company A External IP is 61.11.11.11 Internal IP is 192.168.10.X Company B External IP is 211.22.22.22 Internal IP is 192.168.20.X

To Allow Company A, 192.168.10.100 create a VPN connection with company B, 192.168.20.100 for downloading the sharing file.

The Gateway of Company A is 192.168.10.1. The settings of company A are as the following.

Step 1. Enter the default IP of Company A's Multi-Homing Security Gateway, 192.168.10.1. Click VPN in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select the sub-select IPSec Autokey. Click Add.

Step 2. Enter the VPN name, VPN_A in IPSec Autokey window, and select the WAN interface you want to create the VPN tunnel.

Necessary Item	
Name	VPN_A
WAN interface	● WAN 1 ● WAN 2

Step 3. In To Destination table, choose Remote Gateway-Fixed IP or Domain Name, enter the IP address desired to be connected.

To Destination	
 Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name 	211.22.22.22
Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP	

Step 4. In Authentication Method Table enters the Preshared Key.

Authentication Method	Preshare 💌
Preshared Key	123456789

Step 5. In Encapsulation or Authentication table, choose ISAKMP Algorithm. For communication via VPN, we choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm. And select Group 1 to connect.

Encapsulation	
ISAKMP Algorithm	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
Group	GROUP 1 💌

Step 6. In IPSec Algorithm Table, choose Data Encryption + Authentication. We choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm.

IPSec Algorithm	
 Data Encryption + Authentication 	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💙
Authentication Only	

Step 7. Choose GROUP 1 as the Perfect Forward Secrecy setting, and leave the default setting with 28800 seconds in IPSec Lifetime and 3600 seconds for ISAKMP Lifetime.

Optional Item		
Perfect Forward Secrecy	GROUP 1 💌	
ISAKMP Lifetime	3600	Seconds
IPSec Lifetime	28800	Seconds

Step 8. Select main mode as the algorithm.

Mode 💿 Main mode 💿 Aggressive mode

Step 9. Click OK to finish the IPSec Aotukey setting of Company A.

Policy Object > VPN > IPSec Autokey					
i	Name	WAN	Gateway IP	IPSec Algorithm	Configure
	VPN_A	VVAN1	211.22.22.22	3DES / MD5	Modify Remove

Step 10. Click Trunk and press New Entry to configure the further setting.

Step 11. Enter Site_A as the new trunk name, and select LAN interface as the VPN source. Fill LAN IP subnet 192.168.10.0 with subnet mask IP 255.255.255.0.

New Entry Trunk				
Name	Site_A			
From Source	⊙LAN ○ DMZ			
From Source Subnet / Mask	192.168.10.0	/ 255.255.255.0		

Step 12. In To Destination table, fill company B's subnet IP and mask, 192.168.20.0 and 255.255.255.0 respectively

To Destination			
• To Destination Subnet / Mask	192.168.20.0	/ 255.255.255.0	
Remote Client			

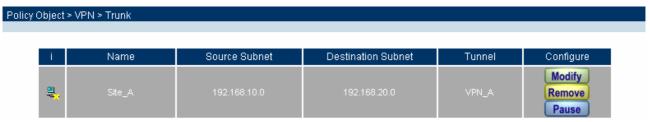
Step 13. In Tunnel, select VPN_A tunnel Available Tunnel, and click the Add>> button to add it to the Select Tunnel.

Tunnel				
	< Available Tunnel> VPN_A	Add	< Selected Tunnel>	

Step 14. Fill company B's gateway IP 192.168.20.1 in Keep alive IP to keep VPN tunnel connecting.

192.168.20.1

Step 15. Click OK to finish the Trunk setting of Company A.



Step 16. If you want to configure bi-direction VPN connection, you should enable Trunk setting in Outgoing and Incoming Policy.

Comment :	
Modify Policy	
Source Address	Inside_Any 💌
Destination Address	Outside_Any 💌
Service	ANY
Schedule	None 💌
Authentication User	None 💌
Trunk	Site_A 💌
Action, WAN Port	None Site_A
Traffic Log	
Statistics	Enable
IDP	Enable
Content Blocking	Enable
MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)

Outgoing Policy:

Policy > Outgoi	ng					
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌
Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	 ✓ 		Modify Remove Pause	то 2 💌

Incoming Policy:

Policy > Incomin	g					
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Outside_Any	Inside_Any(Routing)	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌

The Gateway of Company B is 192.168.20.1. The settings of company B are as the following.

Step 1. Enter the default IP of Company B's Multi-Homing Security Gateway, 192.168.20.1. Click VPN in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select the sub-select IPSec Autokey. Click Add.

Step 2. Enter the VPN name, VPN_B in IPSec Autokey window, and select the WAN interface you want to create the VPN tunnel.

Necessary Item	
Name	VPN_B
WAN interface	● WAN 1 ● WAN 2

Step 3. In To Destination table, choose Remote Gateway-Fixed IP or Domain Name, enter the IP address desired to be connected.

To Destination	
 Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name 	61.11.11.11
Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP	

Step 4. In Authentication Method Table enters the Preshared Key.

Authentication Method	Preshare 💌
Preshared Key	123456789

Step 5. In Encapsulation or Authentication table, choose ISAKMP Algorithm. For communication via VPN, we choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm. And select Group 1 to connect.

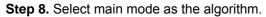
Encapsulation	
ISAKMP Algorithm	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
Group	GROUP 1 💌

Step 6. In IPSec Algorithm Table, choose Data Encryption + Authentication. We choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm.

IPSec Algorithm	
O Data Encryption + Authentication	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 🔽
Authentication Only	

Step 7. Choose GROUP 1 as the Perfect Forward Secrecy setting, and leave the default setting with 28800 seconds in IPSec Lifetime and 3600 seconds for ISAKMP Lifetime.

Optional Item				
Perfect Forward Secrecy	GROUP 1	•		
ISAKMP Lifetime	3600	Seconds		
IPSec Lifetime	28800	Seconds		



Mode	● Main mode ● Aggressive mode
------	-------------------------------

Step 9. Click OK to finish the IPSec Aotukey setting of Company B.

Policy Object > \	/PN ≻ IPSec Autokey				
i	Name	WAN	Gateway IP	IPSec Algorithm	Configure
	VPN_B	WAN1	61.11.11.11	3DES / MD5	Modify Remove

Step 10. Click Trunk and press New Entry to configure the further setting.

Step 11. Enter Site_B as the new trunk name, and select LAN interface as the VPN source. Fill LAN IP subnet 192.168.20.0 with subnet mask IP 255.255.255.0.

New Entry Trunk		
Name	Site_B	
From Source	오 LAN 🔘 DMZ	
From Source Subnet / Mask	192.168.20.0	/ 255.255.255.0

Step 12. In To Destination table, fill company B's subnet IP and mask, 192.168.10.0 and 255.255.255.0

respectively.			
To Destination			
• To Destination Subnet / Mask	192.168.10.0	/ 255.255.255.0	
Remote Client			

Step 13. In Tunnel, select VPN_B tunnel Available Tunnel, and click the Add>> button to add it to the Select Tunnel.

Tunnel				
	< Available Tunnel>		< Selected Tunnel>	
	VPN_B		VPN_B	
		K Remove		
		Add 🔛		

Step 14. Fill company A's gateway IP 192.168.10.1 in Keep alive IP to keep VPN tunnel connecting.

Keep alive IP :	192.168.10.1	
пеер ание ил.	192.100.10.1	

Step 15. Click OK to finish the Trunk setting of Company B.

Policy Object > VPN > Trunk

i Name	Source Subnet	Destination Subnet	Tunnel	Configure
<mark>₽.</mark> Site_B	192.168.20.0	192.168.10.0	VPN_B	Modify Remove Pause

Step 16. If you want to configure bi-direction VPN connection, you should enable Trunk setting in Outgoing and Incoming Policy.

Outgoing Policy:

P	olicy > Outgoir	ng					
	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
	Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌
	Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	 ✓ 		Modify Remove Pause	то 2 💌

Incoming Policy:

Policy > Incoming	g					
			A 11	.		
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Outside_Any	Inside_Any(Routing)	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌

Example 2. Create a VPN connection between the Multi-Homing Security Gateway and Windows XP Professional VPN Client.

Preparation Task:

Company A External IP is 210.66.155.90, Internal IP is 192.168.10.X

Remote User External IP is 210.66.155.91

Remote user with an external IP wants to create a VPN connection with company A and connect to 192.168.10.100 for downloading the sharing file.

The Gateway of Company A is 192.168.10.1. The settings of company A are as the following.

Configuration of CS-1000

Step 1. Enter the default IP of Company A's Multi-Homing Security Gateway, 192.168.10.1. Click VPN in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select the sub-select IPSec Autokey. Click Add.

Step 2. Enter the VPN name, VPN_A in IPSec Autokey window, and select the WAN interface you want to create the VPN tunnel.

Necessary Item	
Name	VPN_A
WAN interface	♥ WAN 1 ● WAN 2

Step 3. In to Destination table, choose Remote Gateway or Client – Dynamic IP.

To Destination	
 Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name 	
• Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP	

Step 4. In Authentication Method Table enters the Preshared Key.

Authentication Method	Preshare 💌
Preshared Key	123456789

Step 5. In Encapsulation or Authentication table, choose ISAKMP Algorithm. For communication via VPN, we choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm. And select Group 2 to connect.

Encapsulation	
ISAKMP Algorithm	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
Group	GROUP 2 💌

Step 6. In IPSec Algorithm Table, choose Data Encryption + Authentication. We choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm.

IPSec Algorithm	
• Data Encryption + Authentication	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
 Authentication Only 	

Step 7. Choose GROUP 2 as the Perfect Forward Secrecy setting, and leave the default setting with 28800 seconds in IPSec Lifetime and 3600 seconds for ISAKMP Lifetime.

Optional Item	
Perfect Forward Secrecy	GROUP 2 💌
ISAKMP Lifetime	3600 Seconds
IPSec Lifetime	28800 Seconds

Step 8. Select main mode as the algorithm.

	Mode	⊙ Main mode
--	------	-------------

Step 9. Click OK to finish the IPSec Aotukey setting of Company A.

Policy Object	> VPN > IPSec Autokey				
i i	Name	WAN	Gateway IP	IPSec Algorithm	Configure
	VPN_A	VVAN1	Dynamic IP	3DES / MD5	Modify Remove

Step 10. Click Trunk and press New Entry to configure the further setting.

Step 11. Enter Site_A as the new trunk name, and select LAN interface as the VPN source. Fill LAN IP subnet 192.168.10.0 with subnet mask IP 255.255.255.0.

New Entry Trunk		
Name	Site_A	
From Source	●LAN ● DMZ	
From Source Subnet / Mask	192.168.10.0	/ 255.255.255.0

Step 12. In To Destination table, select Remote Client.

To Destination		
To Destination Subnet / Mask	7	
• Remote Client		

Step 13. In Tunnel, select VPN_A tunnel Available Tunnel, and click the Add>> button to add it to the Select Tunnel.

Tunnel				
	< Available Tunnel>		< Selected Tunnel>	
	VPN_A	K Remove		
		Add 🔛		

Step 14. Click OK to finish the Trunk setting of Company A.



Step 15. Enable Trunk setting in Incoming Policy.

Add New Policy	
Source Address	Outside_Any 🔽
Destination Address	Inside_Any 🔽
Service	ANY 💌
Schedule	None 💌
Trunk	None 💌
Action	None Site_A
Traffic Log	
Statistics	Enable
IDP	Enable
MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
QoS	None 💌
NAT	Enable

Step 16. Click OK to finish the Policy setting of Company A.

Policy > Incoming	g					
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Outside_Any	Inside_Any(Routing)	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌

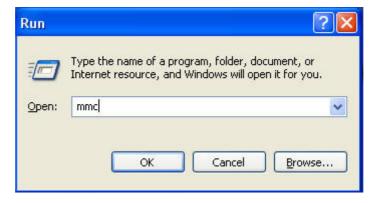
Configuration of WinXP

The IP of remote user is 210.66.155.91. The settings of remote user are as the following.

Step 1. Enter Windows XP, click Start and click Execute function.



Step 2. In the Execute window, enter the command, mmc in Open.



Step 3. Enter the Console window, click Console(C) option and click Add/Remove Embedded Management Option.

🚡 Console1	
Action View Favorites Window Help	
New Ctrl+N Open Ctrl+O Save Ctrl+S Save As Save As	
Add/Remove Snap-in Ctrl+M Options 1 1_C:\WINDOWS\system32\devmgmt	There are no items to show in this view.
E <u>x</u> it	
Adds or removes individual snap-ins.	

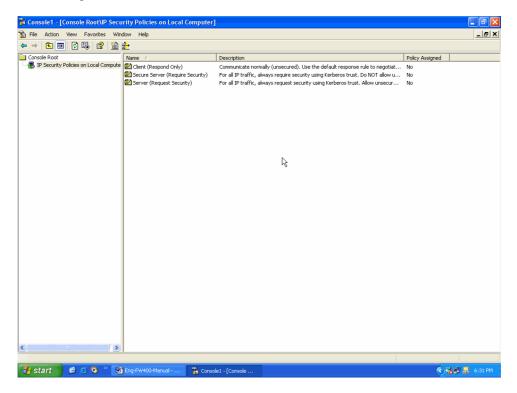
Step 4. Enter Add/Remove Embedded Management Option window and click Add. In Add/ Remove Embedded Management Option window, click Add to add Create IP Security Policy.

Standalone Extensions	Add Standalone Snap-in		?
Use this page to add or remove a standalone Snap-in from the consonap-ins added to:	Available Standalone Snap-ins: Snap-in	Vendor	
2	Group Policy Indexing Service Internet Information Services IP Security Monitor	Microsoft Corporation Microsoft Corporation, I Microsoft Corporation <u>Microsoft Corporation</u> Microsoft Corporation	
	 Link to Web Address Local Users and Groups Performance Logs and Alerts Removable Storage Management Resultant Set of Policy 	Microsoft Corporation Microsoft Corporation Microsoft Corporation Microsoft Corporation Microsoft Corporation	
Description	Description Internet Protocol Security (IPSec) Admini policies for secure communication with o		
Add Remove About	3	Add Clos	:e
ОК	Cancel		

Step 5. Choose Local Machine (L) for finishing the setting of Add.

	puter or Domain ?
	n this console is saved the location will also be saved
 Local 	computer
The co	mputer this console is running on
C The A	ctive Directory domain of which this computer is a member
C Anoth	er Active Directory domain (Use the DNS name, e.g. "example.microsoft.com"):
- Amerika 	
Anoth	er computer:
	Browse
	< Back Finish Cancel

Step 6. Finish the setting of Add.



Step 7. Click the right button of mouse in IP Security Policies on Local Machine and choose Create IP

Security	Policy(C) option.
----------	-------------------

🚡 Console1		
File Action View		
🚡 Console Root		
Console Root	Name	
IP Security Pc	Create IP Security Policy n Local Comp	
	All Tas <u>k</u> s	
	New <u>W</u> indow from Here	
	Refresh	
	Help	
<		
Create an IP Security p	policy	

Step 8. Click Next.

IP Security Policy Wizard	? 🛛
	Welcome to the IP Security policy wizard.
	This wizard helps you create an IP Security policy. You will specify the level of security to use when communicating with specific computers or groups of computers (subnets), and for particular IP traffic types.
	To continue, click Next.
	< Back Next > Cancel

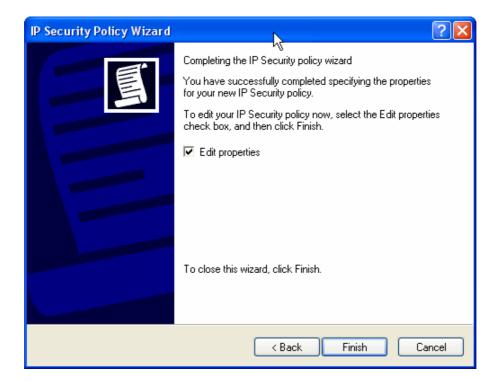
Step 9. Enter the Name of this VPN and optionally give it a brief description.

Security Policy Wizard	?
IP Security Policy Name Name this IP Security policy and p	provide a brief description
Name:	
IPSec	
Description:	
IPSec	
	×
	< Back Next > Cancel

Step 10. Disable Activate the default response rule. And click Next.

IP Security Policy Wizard
Requests for Secure Communication Specify how this policy responds to requests for secure communication.
The default response rule responds to remote computers that request security, when no other rule applies. To communicate securely, the computer must respond to requests for secure communication.
Activate the default response rule.
< Back Next > Cancel

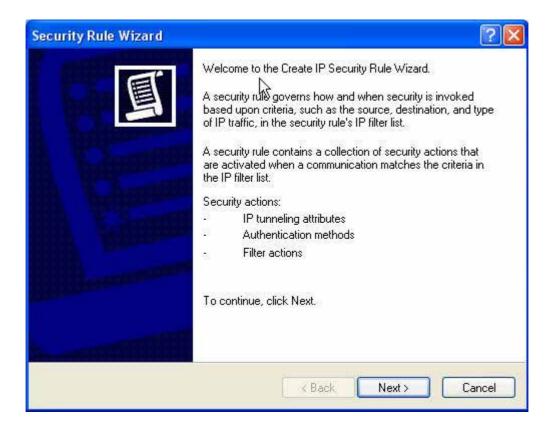
Step 11. Completing the IP Security Policy setting and click Finish. Enable Edit properties.



Step 12. In window, click Add and click Use Add Wizard.

IPSec Properties				? 🗙
Rules General				
Security r	ules for communic	cating with o	ther computers	
IP Security rules:	Filter Action		Authentication	Tu
Opnamic>	Default Re		Kerberos	Nc
	Edit	Remove	🛛 🔽 Use Add W	/izard
			ок с	ancel

Step 13. Click next.



Step 14. Enter the WAN IP of Remote user, 210.66.155.91.

ecurity	Rule	Wiz	ard													?
	e tunr	nel end	t Ipoint is the sec						closes	st to t	the If	^o trafi	ic de:	stinati	on,	ļ
			el allow: f a direc											rk wit	h the	
Spe	ecify t	he tun	nel end	poin	t for the	IP 9	Secur	ity r	ule:							
C	This	rule do	bes not	spec	ify a tur	nnel										
æ	The	tunnel	endpoir	nt is :	specifie	d by	this	IP	addre	SS:						
		210	. 66		155		91		1							
	1				100											
								C	< Ba	ack	ור	N	ext >			ancel
								-						_		

Step 15. click all network connections.



Step 16. Choose Use this string to protect the key exchange (Preshared Key). And enter the key, 123456789.

Security Rule Wizard	? 🔀
Authentication Method To add multiple authentication methods, edit the security rule after con IP Security rule wizard.	npleting the
Set the initial authentication method for this security rule: Active Directory default (Kerberos V5 protocol) Use a certificate from this certification authority (CA):	
 Use this string to protect the key exchange (preshared key): 	Browse
123456789	
	<u>~</u>
< Back Next	> Cancel

Step 17. Click Add.

	list matches your needs, click Add to create	a new one.
IP filter lists: Name	Description	Add
O All ICMP Traffic	Matches all ICMP packets bet	Edit
O All IP Traffic	Matches all IP packets from t	
		Remove

Step 18. Enter the name of IP filter and click "Add..".

Name: Traffic-in				
Descriptio	n:			Add
				E dit
			S.	Remove
Filters:			U 되	lse Add Wizard
Mirrored	Description	Protocol	Source Port	Destination

Step 19. Click next.



Step 20. In Source address, click down the arrow to select the specific IP Subnet and fill Company A's IP Address, 192.168.10.0 and Subnet mask 255.255.255.0.

s of the IF	^o tra	ffic.						
					~			
					-			
192		168	-	10	3	0		
255	•	255	32	255		0		
		ſ	<	Back	ור	Next >		Cancel
	192	192 .		192 . 168 . 255 . 255 .	2 192 . 168 . 10	▼ 192 . 168 . 10 . 255 . 255 . 255 .	192 168 10 0 255 255 255 0	▼ 192 . 168 . 10 . 0 255 . 255 . 255 . 0

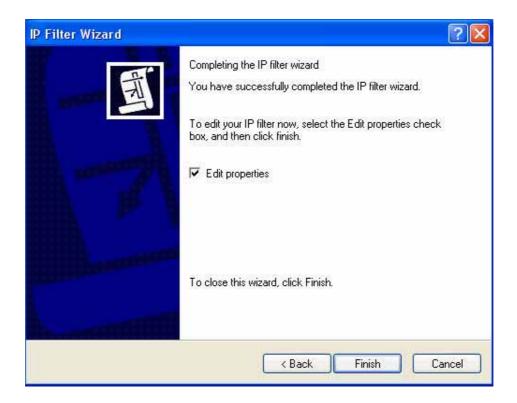
Step 21. In Destination address, click down the arrow to select the My IP Address.



Step 22. Click next.

lter Wizard		?
IP Protocol Type Select the IP protocol type. If this type is source and destination ports.	s TCP or UDP, you will also specify the	Ē
Select a protocol type:		
Any 👻		
r 🖃		
	<back next=""> (</back>	Cancel

Step 23. Please enable edit properties, and click finish.



Step 24. Please don't enable Mirrored, and click OK.

Tes etca	cific IP Subnet		_				•	
	IP Address:	192		168	53	10	8368	0
	Subnet mask:	255		255	8	255	line:	0

Step 25. Click OK.

Name:				
Traffic-in				-
Description	n:			Add
			<u>^</u>	Edit
				Remove
Filters:				Use Add Wizard
		21772410W0000		1.2.
Mirrored	Description	Protocol	Source Port	Destination

Step 26. Select Traffic-in and click next.

All ICMP Traffic Matches all ICMP packets bet All IP Traffic Matches all IP packets from t	IP filter lists:		
O All IP Traffic Matches all IP packets from t	Name	Description	Add
Traffic-in Remove	O All ICMP Traffic O All IP Traffic		Edit
			Remove

Step 27. Enable User Add Wizard and click add.

Secur	ity Rule Wizard		? 🛛
Filt	er Action Select the filter action for this secu	rity rule.	A []
	If no filter actions in the following lis one. Select Use Add Wizard to cre Filter Actions:	ate a filter action using the wizard.	o create a new Use Add Wizard
	Name	Description	Add
	O Permit O Request Security (Optional) O Require Security	Permit unsecured IP packets t Accepts unsecured communi Accepts unsecured communi	Edit
	1		
		K Back Nex	Cancel

Step 28. Click next.



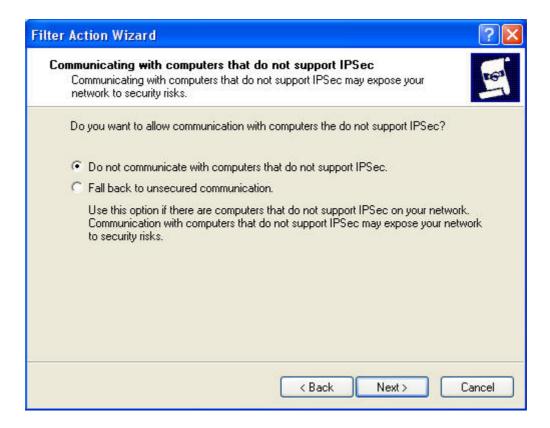
Step 29. Enter the name of filter action and click next.

Filter Action Wizard	? 🔀
Filter Action Name Name this filter action and provide a brief descrip	tion.
Name:	
Security	
Description:	
	×
	< Back Next > Cancel

Step 30. Select Negotiate security and click next.

Filter Action	? 🔀
Filter Action General Options Set the filter action behavior.	1
C Permit	
C Block	
 Negotiate security: 	
	<pre>< Back Next > Cancel</pre>

Step 31. Click next.



Step 32. Select Custom and click settings.

Filter Action Wizard	? 🔀
IP Traffic Security Specify a security method for IP traffic. To add multiple security methods, edit the filter action after completing the wizard.	161
This filter action requires at least one security method for IP traffic.	
 Encryption and Integrity Data will be encrypted, authenticated, and unmodified. Integrity only Data will be authentic and unmodified, but will not be encrypted. 	
Custom Settings	
< Back Next > 0	Cancel

Step 33. Click Data Integrity and Encapsulation and choose MD5 and 3DES. Click Generate a New key after every 28800 seconds. And click 3 times OK to return.

Integrity algo	1999 - 1999 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 -	encryption (AH) :	
MD5	*		
 Data integrity Integrity algo 	y and encryption (ESF prithm:	'):	
MD5	•		
Encryption a	lgorithm:		
3DES	•		
Session key s	ettings: a new key every: —	Generate	a new key every

Step 34. Click finish.



Step 35. Select security and click next.

ecurity Rule Wizard		? 🛛
Filter Action Select the filter action for this secu	urity rule.	<u>I</u>
	st matches your needs, click Add to eate a filter action using the wizard.	
Name	Description	Add
O Permit O Request Security (Optional)	Permit unsecured IP packets t Accepts unsecured communi	Edit
Require Security Security	Accepts unsecured communi	Remove
	< Back Nex	t> Cancel

Step 36. Click finish.



Step 37. Click Add.

IPSec Properties			? 🗙
	ules for communicating with	other computers	
IP Security rules:	Filter Action	Authentication	Tu
✓ Traffic-in	Security	Preshared Key	21
☐ <dynamic></dynamic>	Default Response	Kerberos	Nc
<]	>
Add	Edit Remove	📙 🔽 Use Add W	/izard
	Close	Cancel A	pply

Step 38. Click next.



Step 39. Enter the WAN IP of company A, 210.66.155.90.

Security Rule Wizard	×
Tunnel Endpoint The tunnel endpoint is the tunneling computer closest to the IP traffic destination, as specified by the security rule's IP filter list.	S
An IPSec tunnel allows packets to traverse a public or private internetwork with the security level of a direct, private connection between two computers.	
Specify the tunnel endpoint for the IP Security rule:	
C This rule does not specify a tunnel	
The tunnel endpoint is specified by this IP address:	
210 . 66 . 155 . 90	
< Back Next > Cancel	

Step 40. Select All network connections and click next.

Security Rule Wizard	2 🗵
Network Type The security rule must be applied to a	a network type.
Select the network type: All network connections Local area network (LAN) Remote access	₩
	< Back Next > Cancel

Step 41. Choose Use this string to protect the key exchange (Preshared Key). And enter the key, 123456789.

Security Rule Wizard	? 🔀
Authentication Method To add multiple authentication methods, edit the security rule after completir IP Security rule wizard.	ng the
Set the initial authentication method for this security rule:	
 Active Directory default (Kerberos V5 protocol) 	
Use a certificate from this certification authority (CA):	
	frowse
Use this string to protect the key exchange (preshared key):	
123456789	~
	×
< Back Next >	Cancel

Step 42. Click Add.

Secur	ity Rule Wizard		? 🛛
IPI	Filter List Select the IP filter list for the	e type of IP traffic to which this security rule a	pplies.
	If no IP filter in the following IP filter lists:	list matches your needs, click Add to create	a new one.
	Name	Description	Add
		Matches all ICMP packets bet	
	O All IP Traffic	Matches all IP packets from t	Edit
	O Traffic-in		Remove
		<pre></pre>	Cancel

Step 43. Enter the name of IP filter and click "Add...".

Name: Traffic-ou	θ.			
escriptio	n:			Add
			1	Edit
				Remove
Filters:			U 🟹	se Add Wizard
Mirrored	Description	Protocol	Source Port	Destination

Step 44. Click next



Step 45. In Source address, click down the arrow to select the My IP Address.

Filter Wizard	? 🗙
IP Traffic Source Specify the source address of the IP traffic.	Ē
Source address:	65
My IP Address	•
(< Back Next > Cancel

Step 46. In Destination address, click down the arrow to select the specific IP Subnet and fill Company A's IP Address, 192.168.10.0 and Subnet mask 255.255.255.0.

Iter Wizard IP Traffic Destination Specify the destination add	ress of th	ie IF	^o traffic.					?
Destination address:								
A specific IP Subnet						•		
IP address:	192		168	54	10		0	
Subnet mask:	255		255		255		0	
			[<	Back	ור	Next>	Cancel

Step 47. Click next.

Filter Wizard	? 🗙
IP Protocol Type Select the IP protocol type. If this type is TCP or UDP, you will also specify the source and destination ports.	E
Select a protocol type:	
< Back Next >	Cancel

Step 48. Please enable Edit properties and click finish.



Step 49. Please don't enable Mirrored and click ok.

er Properties	?
dressing Protocol Descri	iption
Source address:	
My IP Address	•
Destination address:	
A specific IP Subnet	
1	
IP address:	192 . 168 . 10 . 0
Subnet mask:	255 . 255 . 255 . 0
	1
	kets with the exact opposite source and
destination addresses.	

Step 50. Click ok.

Name: Traffic-out	ť			
Description				Add
			8	Edit
			~	Remove
Filters:			ب	Jse Add Wizard
Mirrored	Description	Protocol	Source Port	Destinatio
No		ANY	ANY	ANY

Step 51. Select Traffic-out and click next.

Security Rule Wizard		? 🛛
IP Filter List Select the IP filter list for th	e type of IP traffic to which this security rule a	applies.
If no IP filter in the following	g list matches your needs, click Add to create	a new one.
Name	Description	Add
O All ICMP Traffic O All IP Traffic	Matches all ICMP packets bet Matches all IP packets from t	Edit
O Traffic-in O Traffic-out		Remove
	< Back Next >	Cancel

Step 52. Select Security and click edit.

one. Select Use Add Wizard to cr	ist matches your needs, click Add to eate a filter action using the wizard.	
Filter Actions:	Description	Use Add Wizard Add
O Permit O Request Security (Optional)	Permit unsecured IP packets t Accepts unsecured communi	Edit
O Require Security O Security	Accepts unsecured communi	Remove

Step 53. Enable Session key perfect forward secrecy (PFS) and click ok.

curity Pr	operties			?
ecurity Mel	thods General			
	ate security: ethod preference	order		
Туре	AH Integrity	ESP Confidential	ES	Add
Custom	<none></none>	3DES	ME	Edit
				Remove
				Move up
<			>	Move down
Π Allow ι	insecured commu	munication, but always i inication with non-IPSe vard secrecy (PFS)		
		οκ ι α	Cancel	Apply

Step 54. Select Security and click next.

one. Select Use Add Wizard to cr Filter Actions:	ist matches your needs, click Add to eate a filter action using the wizard.	Use Add Wizard
Name	Description	Add
O Permit O Request Security (Optional)	Permit unsecured IP packets t Accepts unsecured communi	Edit
Require Security Security	Accepts unsecured communi	Remove

Step 55. Please don't enable Edit properties and click finish.



Step 56. Click apply first and then click ok.

-	curity rules:	Filter Action	A. the shires	L T
	rilter List Fraffic-out	Filter Action Security	Authentication Preshared Key	Tu 21
	Fraffic-in	Security	Preshared Key	21
	(Dynamic)	Default Response	Kerberos	No
		m.		>

Step 57 Click the right button of mouse in IPSec choose Assign option.

The Console1 File Action View Favorites Window ← → € ズ ☎ ½	Help				
 Console Root \IP Security Policies Console Root Console Root 	on Local Computer Name / Client (Respond Only) IPSec Secure Server (Requir	Description Communicate normally (uns IPSec For all IP traffic, always req For all IP traffic, always req	Polic No No No	y Assigned All Tasks Delete Rename Properties Help	
< <u> </u>					

Step 58. Ping the remote gateway of Company A, the VPN tunnel is created successfully.

C:\WINDOWS\System32\ping.exe	- 🗆 ×
Pinging 192.168.10.1 with 32 bytes of data:	^
Negotiating IP Security. Request timed out.	
Reply from 192.168.10.1: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=64 Reply from 192.168.10.1: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=64	
Reply from 192.168.10.1: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=64 Reply from 192.168.10.1: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=64	
Reply from 192.168.10.1: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=64	
	-

Example 3. Create a VPN connection between two Multi-Homing Security Gateways using Aggressive mode Algorithm (3DES and MD5), and data encryption for IPSec Algorithm (3DES and MD5)

Preparation Task:

Company A External IP is 61.11.11.11

Internal IP is 192.168.10.X

Company B External IP is 211.22.22.22 Internal IP is 192.168.20.X

To Allow Company A, 192.168.10.100 create a VPN connection with company B, 192.168.20.100 for downloading the sharing file.

The Gateway of Company A is 192.168.10.1. The settings of company A are as the following.

Step 1. Enter the default IP of Company A's Multi-Homing Security Gateway, 192.168.10.1. Click VPN in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select the sub-select IPSec Autokey. Click Add.

Step 2. Enter the VPN name, VPN_A in IPSec Autokey window, and select the WAN interface you want to create the VPN tunnel.

Necessary Item	
Name	VPN_A
WAN interface	O WAN 1 ● WAN 2

Step 3. In To Destination table, choose Remote Gateway-Fixed IP or Domain Name, enter the IP address desired to be connected.

To Destination	
 Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name 	211.22.22.22
Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP	

Step 4. In Authentication Method Table enters the Preshared Key.

Authentication Method	Preshare 💌
Preshared Key	123456789

Step 5. Enable Aggressive mode. For communication via VPN, the Multi-Homing Security Gateway will force you to choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm, SHA-1 for AUTH Algorithm and select Group 2 to connect.

Local ID and Remote ID are optional parameters. If we choose to enter Local ID/ Remote ID, they couldn't be the same. For instance, Local ID is 11.11.11.11 and Remote ID is 22.22.22.22. If you want to use number or text, add @ in the front, for instance, @123 and @abc.

Encapsulation	
ISAKMP Algorithm	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	SHA1 💌
Group	GROUP 2 💌

Mode	● Main mode ● Aggressive mode	
My ID	@123	
Peer ID	@abc	

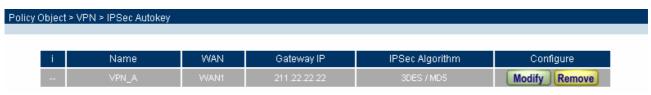
Step 6. In IPSec Algorithm Table, choose Data Encryption + Authentication. We choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm.

IPSec Algorithm	
 Data Encryption + Authentication 	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💙
 Authentication Only 	

Step 7. Choose GROUP 1 as the Perfect Forward Secrecy setting, and leave the default setting with 28800 seconds in IPSec Lifetime and 3600 seconds for ISAKMP Lifetime.

Optional Item				
Perfect Forward Secrecy	GROUP 1 💊			
ISAKMP Lifetime	3600	Seconds		
IPSec Lifetime	28800	Seconds		

Step 8. Click OK to finish the setting of Company A.



Step 9. Click Trunk and press New Entry to configure the further setting.

Step 10. Enter Site_A as the new trunk name, and select LAN interface as the VPN source. Fill LAN IP subnet 192.168.10.0 with subnet mask IP 255.255.255.0.

New Entry Trunk				
Name	Site_A			
From Source	●LAN ● DMZ			
From Source Subnet / Mask	192.168.10.0	/ 255.255.255.0		

Step 11. In To Destination table, fill company B's subnet IP and mask, 192.168.20.0 and 255.255.255.0 respectively.

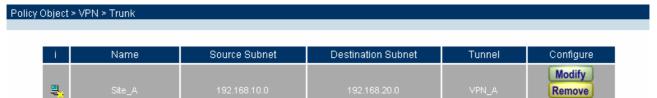
Pause

To Destination			
 To Destination Subnet / Mask 	192.168.20.0	/ 255.255.255.0	
 Remote Client 			

Step 12. In Tunnel, select VPN_A tunnel Available Tunnel, and click the Add>> button to add it to the Select Tunnel.

Tunnel			
	< Available Tunnel>		< Selected Tunnel>
	VPN_A		
		K Remove	
		Add 🔉	
	1		

Step 13. Click OK to finish the Trunk setting of Company A.



Step 14. If you want to configure bi-direction VPN connection, you should enable Trunk setting in Outgoing and Incoming Policy.

Policy > Outgoing		

Comment :	
Modify Policy	
Source Address	Inside_Any 💌
Destination Address	Outside_Any 💌
Service	ANY
Schedule	None 💌
Authentication User	None 💌
Trunk	Site_A 💌
Action, WAN Port	None Site_A
Traffic Log	Enable
Statistics	Enable
IDP	Enable
Content Blocking	Enable
MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
QoS	None 🔽

Outgoing Policy:

Policy > Outgoir	ng					ļ
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌
Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	 ✓ 		Modify Remove Pause	то 2 💌

Incoming Policy:

Policy > Incomin	g					
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Outside_Any	Inside_Any(Routing)	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌

The Gateway of Company B is 192.168.20.1. The settings of company B are as the following.

Step 1. Enter the default IP of Company B's Multi-Homing Security Gateway, 192.168.20.1. Click VPN in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select the sub-select IPSec Autokey. Click Add.

Step 2. Enter the VPN name, VPN_B in IPSec Autokey window, and select the WAN interface you want to create the VPN tunnel.

Necessary Item	
Name	VPN_B
WAN interface	♥ WAN 1 ♥ WAN 2

Step 3. In To Destination table, choose Remote Gateway-Fixed IP or Domain Name, enter the IP address desired to be connected.

To Destination	
 Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name 	61.11.11.11
Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP	

Step 4. In Authentication Method Table enters the Preshared Key.

Authentication Method	Preshare 💌
Preshared Key	123456789

Step 5. Enable Aggressive mode. For communication via VPN, the Multi-Homing Security Gateway will force you to choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm, SHA-1 for AUTH Algorithm and select Group 2 to connect.

Local ID and Remote ID are optional parameters. If we choose to enter Local ID/ Remote ID, they couldn't be the same. For instance, Local ID is 11.11.11.11 and Remote ID is 22.22.22.22. If you want to use number or text, add @ in the front, for instance, @123 and @abc.

Encapsulation	
ISAKMP Algorithm	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	SHA1 💌
Group	GROUP 2 💌

Mode	● Main mode ● Aggressive mode	
My ID	@abc	
Peer ID	@123	

Step 6. In IPSec Algorithm Table, choose Data Encryption + Authentication. We choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm.

IPSec Algorithm	
• Data Encryption + Authentication	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
Authentication Only	

Step 7. Choose GROUP 1 as the Perfect Forward Secrecy setting, and leave the default setting with 28800 seconds in IPSec Lifetime and 3600 seconds for ISAKMP Lifetime.

Optional Item	
Perfect Forward Secrecy	GROUP 1 💌
ISAKMP Lifetime	3600 Seconds
IPSec Lifetime	28800 Seconds

Step 8. Click OK to finish the setting of Company B.



Step 9. Click Trunk and press New Entry to configure the further setting.

Step 10. Enter Site_B as the new trunk name, and select LAN interface as the VPN source. Fill LAN IP subnet 192.168.20.0 with subnet mask IP 255.255.255.0.

то 2 💌

New Entry Trunk			
Name	Site_B		
From Source	오 LAN 💿 DMZ		
From Source Subnet / Mask	192.168.20.0	/ 255.255.255.0	

Step 11. In To Destination table, fill company A's subnet IP and mask, 192.168.10.0 and 255.255.255.0

respectively. To Destination

To Destination			
• To Destination Subnet / Mask	192.168.10.0	/ 255.255.255.0	
Remote Client			

Step 12. In Tunnel, select VPN_B tunnel Available Tunnel, and click the Add>> button to add it to the Select Tunnel.

Tunnel				
	< Available Tunnel>		< Selected Tunnel>	
	VPN_B		VPN_B	
		K Remove		
		Add 📎		

Step 13. Click OK to finish the Trunk setting of Company B.

Policy Object > VPN > Trunk							
i	Name	Source Subnet	Destination Subnet	Tunnel	Configure		
삊.	Site_A	192.168.10.0	192.168.20.0	VPN_A	Modify Remove Pause		

Step 14. If you want to configure bi-direction VPN connection, you should enable Trunk setting in Outgoing and Incoming Policy.

Outgoing Policy:

Policy > Outgoing						
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌

Inside_Any Outside_Any ANY 🖌 Modify Remove Pause

Incoming Policy:

Policy > Incoming						
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Outside_Any	Inside_Any(Routing)	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌

Example 4. Create a VPN trunk connection between CS-1000 (Company A) and CS-1000 (Company B), using ISAKMP Algorithm (3DES and MD5), data encryption for IPSec Algorithm (3DES and MD5) and GRE.

Preparation Task: Company A's External WAN 1 IP is 61.11.11.11 WAN 2 IP is 61.22.22.22 Internal IP is 192.168.10.X Company B's External WAN 1 IP is 211.11.11.11 WAN 2 IP is 211.22.22.22 Internal IP is 192.168.20.X

To Allow Company A, 192.168.10.100 create a VPN trunk connection with company B, 192.168.20.100 for downloading the sharing file by GRE/ IPSec Algorithm.

The Gateway of Company A is 192.168.10.1. The settings of company A are as the following.

Step 1. Enter the default IP of Company A's CS-1000, 192.168.10.1. Click VPN in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select the sub-select IPSec Autokey. Click Add.

Step 2. Enter the VPN name, Site_A_1 in IPSec Autokey window, select WAN 1 as the interface to create the first VPN connection.

Necessary Item			
Name	Site_A_1		
WAN interface	♥ WAN 1 ♥ WAN 2		

Step 3. In To Destination table, choose Remote Gateway-Fixed IP or Domain name, enter the Company B's WAN 1 IP address.

To Destination		
 Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name 	211.11.11.11	
Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP		

Step 4. In Authentication Method Table, enter the Preshared Key.

Authentication Method	Preshare 💌
Preshared Key	123456789

Step 5. In Encapsulation / ISAKMP Algorithm, choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm. And select Group 2 to connect.

Encapsulation	
ISAKMP Algorithm	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
Group	GROUP 2 💌

Step 6. In IPSec Algorithm Table, choose Data Encryption + Authentication. We choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm.

IPSec Algorithm	
 Data Encryption + Authentication 	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
Authentication Only	

Step 7. Choose Perfect Forward Secrecy as GROUP 2, and enter 3600 seconds in ISAKMP Lifetime, 28800 seconds in IPSec Lifetime.

Optional Item				
Perfect Forward Secrecy	crecy GROUP 2 💌			
ISAKMP Lifetime	3600	Seconds		
IPSec Lifetime	28800	Seconds		

Step 8. Choose GRE/ IPSec and enter GRE Local IP, 10.0.0.1 and GRE Remote IP, 10.0.0.254.

NOTE: The Local IP and Remote IP should be in the same IP subnet, and they also can not be the same IP subnet with both devices' WAN or LAN IP subnet

GREAPSec		
GRE Local IP	10.0.0.1	
GRE Remote IP	10.0.0.254	

Step 9. Click OK to	o finish the WAN 1	setting of Company A.
---------------------	--------------------	-----------------------

Policy Object > VPN > IPSec Autokey

i	Name	WAN	Gateway IP	IPSec Algorithm	Configure
	Site_A_1	VVAN1	211.11.11.11	3DES / MD5	Modify Remove

Step 10. Follow the previous steps to create WAN 2 VPN rule.

Step 11. Enter the VPN name, Site_A_2 in IPSec Autokey window, select WAN 2 as the interface to create the first VPN connection.

lecessary Item				
Name	Site_A_2			
WAN interface	• WAN 1 • WAN 2			

Step 12. In To Destination table, choose Remote Gateway-Fixed IP or Domain name, enter the Company B's WAN 2 IP address.

To Destination	
 Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name 	211.22.22.22
Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP	

Step 13. In Authentication Method Table, enter the Preshared Key. If the value is different with Site_A_1 that will be better.

Authentication Method	Preshare 💌
Preshared Key	987654321

Step 14. Follow Step 5, 6, 7 to configure related encryption and authentication setting.

Step 15. Choose GRE/ IPSec and enter GRE Local IP, 10.1.1.1 and GRE Remote IP, 10.1.1.254.

NOTE: The Local IP and Remote IP should be in the same IP subnet, and they also can not be the same IP subnet with both devices' WAN, LAN and Site A 1 GRE setting's IP subnet.

GRE/IPSec		
GRE Local IP	10.1.1.1	
GRE Remote IP	10.1.1.254	

Step 16. Click OK to finish the WAN 2 setting of Company A.

icy Object > \	<u>/PN > IPSec Autokey</u>	1			
i	Name	WAN	Gateway IP	IPSec Algorithm	Configure
	Site_A_1	WAN1	211.11.11.11	3DES / MD5	Modify Remove
	Site A 2	WAN2	211.22.22.22	3DES / MD5	Modify Remove

Step 17. Click Trunk and press New Entry to configure the further setting.

Step 18. Enter VPN_Trunk_A as the new trunk name, and select LAN interface as the VPN source. Fill LAN

то 2 🔽

IP subnet 192.168.10.0 with subnet mask IP 255.255.255.0.

Modify VPN_Trunk_8 Trunk		
Name	VPN_Trunk_A	
From Source	●LAN ● DMZ	
From Source Subnet / Mask	192.168.10.0	/ 255.255.255.0

Step 19. In To Destination table, fill company B's subnet IP and mask, 192.168.20.0 and 255.255.255.0 respectively.

respectively.			
To Destination			
• To Destination Subnet / Mask	192.168.20.0	/ 255.255.255.0	
Remote Client			

Step 20. Select Site_A_1 and Site_A_2 in Available Tunnel, and click the Add>> button to add it to the Select Tunnel.

Tunnel			
	< Available Tunnel>		< Selected Tunnel>
	Site_A_1 Site_A_2	K Remove	
		Add 🔛	

Step 21. Click OK to finish the Trunk setting of Company A.

Policy Object	> VPN > Trunk					
i i	Nomo	Source Subnet	Dectination Subnet	Tunnol	Configure	

i	Name	Source Subnet	Destination Subnet	Tunnel	Configure
삍.	VPN_Trunk_A	192.168.10.0	192.168.20.0	Site_A_1	Modify Remove Pause

Step 22. Enable Trunk setting in Outgoing and Incoming Policy.

Outgoing Policy:

Policy ≻ Outgoir	ng					
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌

Inside_Any Outside_Any ANY 🖌 Modify Remove Pause

Incoming Policy:

Policy > Incoming						
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Outside_Any	Inside_Any(Routing)	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌

The Gateway of Company B is 192.168.20.1. The settings of company B are as the following.

Step 1. Enter the default IP 192.168.20.1 of Company B's CS-1000. Click VPN in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select the sub-select IPSec Autokey. Click Add.

Step 2. Enter the VPN name, Site_B_1 in IPSec Autokey window, select WAN 1 as the interface to create the first VPN connection.

Necessary Item					
Name	Site_B_1				
WAN interface	● WAN 1 ● WAN 2				

Step 3. In To Destination table, choose Remote Gateway-Fixed IP or Domain name, enter the Company A's WAN 1 IP address.

To Destination	
 Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name 	61.11.11.11
Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP	

Step 4. In Authentication Method Table, choose Preshare and enter the Preshared Key.

Authentication Method	Preshare 💌
Preshared Key	123456789

Step 5. In Encapsulation -> ISAKMP Algorithm, choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm. And select Group 2 to connect.

Encapsulation	
ISAKMP Algorithm	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
Group	GROUP 2 💌

Step 6. In IPSec Algorithm Table, choose Data Encryption + Authentication. We choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm.

IPSec Algorithm	
 Data Encryption + Authentication 	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
Authentication Only	

Step 7. Choose Perfect Forward Secrecy as GROUP 2, and enter 3600 seconds in ISAKMP Lifetime, 28800 seconds in IPSec Lifetime.

Optional Item					
Perfect Forward Secrecy	GROUP 2 💌				
ISAKMP Lifetime	3600 Seconds				
IPSec Lifetime	28800 Seconds				

Step 8. Choose GRE/ IPSec and enter GRE Local IP, 10.0.0.254 and GRE Remote IP, 10.0.0.1.

NOTE: The Local IP and Remote IP should be in the same IP subnet, and they also can not be the same IP subnet with both deviace? WAN or LAN ID subnet

subnet with both devices' WAN or LAN IP subnet

GREAPSec		
GRE Local IP	10.0.0.254	
GRE Remote IP	10.0.0.1	

Step 10. Click OK to finish the WAN 1 VPN setting of Company B.

Policy Object > VPN > IPSec Autokey							
i	Name	WAN	Gateway IP	IPSec Algorithm	Configure		
	Site_B_1	WAN1	61.11.11.11	3DES / MD5	Modify Remove		

Step 11. Follow the previous steps to create WAN 2 VPN rule.

Step 12. Enter the VPN name, Site_B_2 in IPSec Autokey window, select WAN 2 as the interface to create the first VPN connection.

Necessary Item					
Name	Site_B_2				
WAN interface	● WAN 1 ● WAN 2				

Step 13. In To Destination table, choose Remote Gateway-Fixed IP or Domain name, enter the Company A's WAN 2 IP address.

To Destination		
 Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name 	61.22.22.22	
Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP		

Step 14. In Authentication Method Table, choose Preshare and enter the Preshared Key.

Authentication Method	Preshare 💌
Preshared Key	987654321

Step 15. Follow Step 5, 6, 7 to configure related encryption and authentication setting.

Step 16. Choose GRE/ IPSec and enter GRE Local IP, 10.1.1.254 and GRE Remote IP, 10.1.1.1.

NOTE: The Local IP and Remote IP should be in the same IP subnet, and they also can not be the same IP subnet with both devices' WAN or LAN IP subnet

Subilet with both devices	Subrict	

	-
GRE Local IP	10.1.1.254
GRE Remote IP	10.1.1.1

Step 17. Click OK to finish the WAN 2 VPN setting of Company B.

olicy Object > VPN > IPSec Autokey							
i i i	Name	WAN	Gateway IP	IPSec Algorithm	Configure		
	Site_B_1	VVAN1	61.11.11.11	3DES / MD5	Modify Remove		
	Site_B_2	WAN2	61.22.22.22	3DES / MD5	Modify Remove		

Step 17. Click Trunk and press New Entry to configure the further setting.

Step 18. Enter VPN_Trunk_B as the new trunk name, and select LAN interface as the VPN source. Fill LAN IP subnet 192.168.20.0 with subnet mask IP 255.255.255.0.

New Entry Trunk		
Name	VPN_Trunk_B	
From Source	⊙LAN ○ DMZ	
From Source Subnet / Mask	192.168.20.0	/ 255.255.255.0

Step 19. In To Destination table, fill company A's subnet IP and mask, 192.168.10.0 and 255.255.255.0

respectively.

To Destination			
• To Destination Subnet / Mask	192.168.10.0	/ 255.255.255.0	

Step 20. Select Site_B_1 and Site_B_2 in Available Tunnel, and click the Add>> button to add it to the Select Tunnel.

Tunnel				
< Av Site_B_1 Site_B_2	ailable Tunnel>	Kemove	< Selected Tunnel>	

Step 21. Click OK to finish the Trunk setting of Company B.

Object > '	VPN > Trunk				
i	Name	Source Subnet	Destination Subnet	Tunnel	Configure
삍.	VPN_Trunk_₿	192.168.20.0	192.168.10.0	Site_B_1	Modify Remove Pause

Step 22. Enable Trunk setting in Outgoing and Incoming Policy.

Outgoing Policy:

Policy > Outgoing								
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move		
Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌		
Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	 ✓ 		Modify Remove Pause	то 2 💌		

Incoming Policy:

Policy > Incomin	Policy > Incoming						
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move	
Outside_Any	Inside_Any(Routing)	ANY	WPN		Modify Remove Pause	То 1 💌	

Example 5. Create a VPN connection between Multi-Homing Security Gateway and PLANET VRT-311 VPN Router.

Preparation Task:

Company A External IP is 210.66.155.90

Internal IP is 192.168.10.X

Company B External IP is 210.66.155.92

Internal IP is 192.168.20.X

To Allow Company A, 192.168.10.100 create a VPN connection with company B, 192.168.20.100 for downloading the sharing file.

The Gateway of Company A is 192.168.10.1. The settings of company A are as the following.

Step 1. Enter the default IP of Company A's Multi-Homing Security Gateway, 192.168.10.1. Click VPN in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select the sub-select IPSec Autokey. Click Add.

Step 2. Enter the VPN name, VPN_A in IPSec Autokey window, and select the WAN interface you want to create the VPN tunnel.

Necessary Item					
Name	cs				
WAN interface	● WAN 1 ● WAN 2				

Step 3. In To Destination table, choose Remote Gateway-Fixed IP or Domain Name, enter the IP address desired to be connected.

To Destination	
 Remote Gateway Fixed IP or Domain Name 	210.66.155.92
Remote Gateway or Client Dynamic IP	

Step 4. In Authentication Method Table enters the Preshared Key.

Authentication Method	Preshare 💌
Preshared Key	12345678

Step 5. In Encapsulation or Authentication table, choose ISAKMP Algorithm. For communication via VPN, we choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm. And select Group 2 to connect.

Encapsulation	
ISAKMP Algorithm	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
Group	GROUP 2 💌

Step 6. In IPSec Algorithm Table, choose Data Encryption + Authentication. We choose 3DES for ENC Algorithm and MD5 for AUTH Algorithm.

IPSec Algorithm	
 Data Encryption + Authentication 	
ENC Algorithm	3DES 💌
AUTH Algorithm	MD5 💌
 Authentication Only 	

Step 7. Choose GROUP 2 as the Perfect Forward Secrecy setting, and leave the default setting with 28800

seconds in IPSec Lifetime and 3600 seconds for ISAKMP Lifetime.

Optional Item					
Perfect Forward Secrecy	GROUP 2 💌				
ISAKMP Lifetime	3600	Seconds			
IPSec Lifetime	28800	Seconds			

Step 8. Select main mode as the algorithm.

Mode	● Main mode ● Aggressive mode

Step 9. Click OK to finish the IPSec Aotukey setting of Company A.

Policy Object > VPN > IPSec Autokey							
i i	Name	WAN	Gateway IP	IPSec Algorithm	Configure		
	cs	WAN1	210.66.155.92	3DES / MD5	Modify Remove		

Step 10. Click Trunk and press New Entry to configure the further setting.

Step 11. Enter Site_A as the new trunk name, and select LAN interface as the VPN source. Fill LAN IP subnet 192.168.10.0 with subnet mask IP 255.255.255.0.

New Entry Trunk		
Name	CSVPN	
From Source	오 LAN 💿 DMZ	
From Source Subnet / Mask	192.168.10.0	/ 255.255.255.0

Step 12. In To Destination table, fill company B's subnet IP and mask, 192.168.20.0 and 255.255.255.0

respectively.

To Destination						
• To Destination Subnet / Mask	192.168.20.0	/ 255.255.255.0				
Remote Client						

Step 13. In Tunnel, select VPN_A tunnel Available Tunnel, and click the Add>> button to add it to the Select

Tunnel.				
Tunnel				
	< Available Tunnel> CS	K Remove	< Selected Tunnel> CS	

Step 14. Fill company B's gateway IP 192.168.20.1 in Keep alive IP to keep VPN tunnel connecting.

Keep alive IP :	192.168.20.1	1

Step 15. Click OK to finish the Trunk setting of Company A.



Step 16. If you want to configure bi-direction VPN connection, you should enable Trunk setting in Outgoing and Incoming Policy.

Outgoing Policy:

	Policy > Outgoing									
	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move			
	Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	То 1 💌			
	Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	 ✓ 		Modify Remove Pause	то 2 💌			

Incoming Policy:

Policy > Incoming								
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move		
Outside_Any	Inside_Any(Routing)	ANY	VPN		Modify Remove Pause	То 1 💌		

Step 2: Configure VRT-311 VPN policy as the following:

VPN Policy Definiti	on
Name: MH ✓ Remote VPN endpoint ○□	Enable Policy Allow NetBIOS traffic Dynamic IP Fixed IP: 210, 66, 155, 90 Domain Name:
Local IP addresses	
Type: Submet address 💌 IP a	address: 192.168.20.0 ~ 0 onet Mask: 255.255.255.0
Remote IP addresses	
	address: 192,168,10,0 ~ 0 onet Mask: 255,255,255,0
Authentication & Encryption	1
AH Authentication MD	5 🐱
■ESP Encryption 3DE	🕱 🔽 Key Size: 🌬 🛛 🖌 (AES only)
ESP Authentication MD	5 🔽
🔘 Manual Key Exchange	
IKE (Internet Key Exchar	nge)
Direction	Both Directions 🐱
Local Identity Type	WAN IP Address 🗸
Local Identity Data	210.66.155.92
Remote Identity Typ	e Remote WAN IP 🖌
Remote Identity Dat	a 210.66.155.90
Authentication	○RSA Signature (requires certificate)
	Authentication Algorithm: MD5
Encryption:	3DES V Key Size: 10/4 V (AES only)
Exchange Mode	Main Mode 🗸
IKE SA Life Time:	180 (secs)
🗹 IKE Keep Alive	Ping IP Address: 192, 168, 10, 1
IPSec SA Life Time	: 300 (secs)
DH Group	Group 2 (1024 Bit) 🔽
IKE PFS	Group 2 (1024 Bit) 🗸
IPSec PFS	Group 2 (1024 Bit) 🗸

3.4 Policy

This section provides the Administrator with facilities to sent control policies for packets with different source IP addresses, source ports, destination IP addresses, and destination ports. Control policies decide whether packets from different network objects, network services, and applications are able to pass through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

What is Policy?

The device uses policies to filter packets. Based on source addresses, a packet can be categorized into:

- (1)Outgoing: a client is in the LAN networks while a server is in the WAN networks.
- (2) Incoming, a client is in the WAN networks, while a server is in the LAN networks.
- (3) To DMZ: a client is either in the LAN networks or in the WAN networks while, server is in DMZ.
- (4) From DMZ, a client is in DMZ while server is either in the LAN networks or in the WAN networks.

How do I use Policy?

Source addresses, destination addresses and IP mapping addresses have to be defined in the **Address** menu in advance. Services can be used directly in setting up policies, if they are in the Pre-defined Service menu. Custom services need to be defined in the **Custom** menu before they can be used in the policy settings.

If the destination address of an incoming policy is a Mapped IP address or a Virtual Server address, then the address has to be defined in the **Virtual Server** section instead of the **Address** section.

Policy Directions:

- Step 1. In Address, set names and addresses of source networks and destination networks.
- Step 2. In Service, set services.
- Step 3. In Virtual Server, set names and addresses of mapped IP or virtual server (only applied to Incoming policies).
- Step 4. Set control policies in Policy.

3.4.1 Outgoing

This section describes steps to create policies for packets and services from the LAN network to the WAN network.

Entering the Outgoing window:

Click **Policy** on the left hand side menu bar, then click **Outgoing** under it. A window will appear with a table displaying currently defined Outgoing policies.

	Policy ≻ Outgoing						
■ System ■ Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Policy Object Policy			Ne	ew Entry			
Outgoing Incoming WAN To DMZ							
→ LAN To DMZ → DMZ To WAN							
DMZ TO LAN							

The fields in the Outgoing window are:

- Source: Source network addresses that are specified in the LAN section of Address menu, or all the LAN network addresses.
- Destination: Destination network addresses that are specified in the WAN section of the Address menu, or all of the WAN network addresses.
- **Service:** Specify services provided by WAN network servers.
- Action: Control actions to permit or deny packets from LAN networks to WAN network travelling through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.
- Option: Specify the monitoring functions on packets from LAN networks to WAN networks travelling through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.
- **Configure:** Modify settings.
- **Move:** This sets the priority of the policies, number 1 being the highest priority.

Adding a new Outgoing Policy

Step 1: Click on the New Entry button and the Add New Policy window will appear.

	Policy ≻ Outgoing	
System		
I hterface	Comment :	
Policy Object	Add New Policy	
Policy	Source Address	Inside_Any 🔽
-+ Outgoing	Destination Address	Outside_Any 🔽
-	Service	ANY
-+ WAN To DMZ	Schedule	None 💙
-⇒ LAN To DMZ		
-⇒ DMZ To WAN	Authentication User	None 💌
→ DMZ To LAN	Trunk	None 🗸
Mail Security	Action, WAN Port	PERMIT ALL
IDP	Traffic Log	Enable
Anomaly Flow IP	Statistics	Enable
Monitor	IDP	Enable
	Content Blocking	Enable
	MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
	- QoS	None 💙

Step 2: Configure all the parameters.

Source Address: Select the name of the LAN network from the drop down list. The drop down list contains the names of all LAN networks defined in the LAN section of the **Address** menu. To create a new source address, please go to the LAN section under the **Address** menu.

Destination Address: Select the name of the WAN network from the drop down list. The drop down list contains the names of all WAN networks defined in the WAN section of the **Address** window. To create a new destination address, please go to the WAN section under the **Address** menu.

Service: Specified services provided by WAN network servers. These are services/application that are allowed to pass from the LAN network to the WAN network. Choose ANY for all services.

Schedule: Select the item listed in the schedule to enable the policy to automatically execute the function in a certain time and range.

Authentication User: Select the item listed in the Authentication User to enable the policy to automatically execute the function in a certain time and range.

Trunk: Check to allow VPN traffic passing through.

Action: Select Permit or Deny ALL from the drop down list to allow or reject the packets travelling between the source network and the destination network.

Traffic Log: Check to enable flow monitoring.

Statistics: Check to enable flow statistics.

IDP: Check to enable IDP feature.

Content Blocking: Check to enable Content Blocking.

Max. Concurrent Sessions: The maximum concurrent sessions that allows passing through CS-1000. 0 means it is unlimited.

QoS: Select the item listed in the QoS to enable the policy to automatically execute the function in a

certain time and range.

Step 3: Click **OK** to add a new outgoing policy; or click **Cancel** to cancel adding a new outgoing policy.

Modifying an Outgoing policy

Step 1: In the **Outgoing** policy section, locate the name of the policy desired to be modified and click its corresponding Modify option under the Configure field.

Step 2: In the Modify Policy window, fill in new settings.

- **NOTE:** To change or add selections in the drop-down list for source or destination address, go to the section where the selections are setup. (Source Address→LAN of **Address** menu; Destination Address → WAN of **Address** menu; Service→ [Pre-defined], [Custom] or Group under **Service**).
- Step 3: Click OK to do confirm modification or click Cancel to cancel it.

PLANET		
Pol	icy > Outgoing	
🗷 System		
🗉 Interface	Comment :	
Policy Object	Modify Policy	
S Policy	Source Address	Inside_Any 💌
→ Outgoing	Destination Address	Outside_Any 🔽
_⇒ Incoming	Service	ANY 🔽
-+ WAN To DMZ	Schedule	None V
-⇒ LAN To DMZ	Authentication User	None V
→ DMZ To WAN		
L⇒ DMZ To LAN	Trunk	None 💌
■ Mail Security	Action, WAN Port	PERMIT ALL
IDP	Traffic Log	Enable
🛎 Anomaly Flow IP	Statistics	Z Enable
🎟 Monitor	IDP	Enable
	Content Blocking	Enable
	MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
	QoS	None 💌
		OK

Removing the Outgoing Policy

Step 1. In the **Outgoing** policy section, locate the name of the policy desired to be removed and click its corresponding **Remove** option in the **Configure** field.

Step 2. In the **Remove** confirmation dialogue box, click **OK** to remove the policy or click **Cancel** to cancel removing.

	Policy ≻ Outgoi	ng					
■ System	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Interface Policy Object	Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	2	👁 🔐	Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌
Policy Outgoing Incoming WAN To DMZ LAN To DMZ DMZ To WAN DMZ To WAN	1		Microsof		New Entry		
 Mail Security IDP Anomaly Flow IP 				ОК	Cancel		

Pausing the Outgoing Policy

Step 1. In the **Outgoing** policy section, locate the name of the policy desired to be paused and click its corresponding **Pause** option in the **Configure** field.

Step 2. In the **Pause** confirmation dialogue box, click **OK** to pause the policy or click **Cancel** to cancel pausing.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy > Outgoi	ng					
■ System	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
■ Interface				4			
🗷 Policy Object	Inside_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	 ✓ 	😁 🔟	Modify Remove Pause	То 1 💌
E Policy							
→ Outgoing					New Entry		
→ Incoming							
-+ WAN To DMZ							
-+ LAN To DMZ		Microsoft	Internet E	xplorer			
→ DMZ To WAN							
→ DMZ To LAN		_ ? ₽	vre you sure '	you want to	pause ? This entry will not be eff	ective.	
📧 Mail Security		1					
IDP				OK	Cancel		
🖬 Anomaly Flow IP							

Step 3. When Policy is paused, administrator can modify the Policy Object without removing the Policy.

3.4.2 Incoming

This section describes steps to create policies for packets and services from the WAN network to the LAN network including Mapped IP and Virtual Server.

Enter Incoming window

Step 1: Click **Incoming** under the **Policy** menu to enter the Incoming window. The Incoming table will display current defined policies from the WAN network to assigned Mapped IP or Virtual Server.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy > Incoming						
≖ System ≖ Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
■ Policy Object ■ Policy			N	ew Entry			
→ Outgoing → Incoming → WAN To DMZ							
→ LAN To DMZ → DMZ To WAN → DMZ To LAN							

Step 2: The fields of the Incoming window are:

■ Source: Source networks which are specified in the WAN section of the Address menu, or all the WAN network addresses.

■ Destination: Destination networks, which are IP Mapping addresses or Virtual server network addresses created in Virtual Server menu.

■ Service: Services supported by Virtual Servers (or Mapped IP).

■ Action: Control actions to permit or deny packets from WAN networks to Virtual Server/Mapped IP travelling through the device.

■ **Option:** Specify the monitoring functions on packets from WAN networks to Virtual Server/Mapped IP travelling through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

- **Configure:** Modify settings or remove incoming policy.
- Move: This sets the sequence of the policies, number 1 being the first policy to proceed.

Adding an Incoming Policy

Step 1: Under Incoming of the Policy menu, click the New Entry button.

PLANET		
Wetworking & Communication	licy > Incoming	
■ System		
⊯ System ⊯ Interface	Comment :	
Policy Object	Add New Policy	
E Policy	Source Address	Outside_Any 💌
→ Outgoing	Destination Address	Virtual Server 1(210.66.155.90) 💌
→ Incoming	Service	FTP(21) 🔽
→ WAN To DMZ	Schedule	None 🗸
→ LAN To DMZ	Trunk	None 🗸
→ DMZ To WAN → DMZ To LAN	Action	PERMIT V
■ Mail Security	Traffic Log	Enable
IDP	Statistics	Enable
🕫 Anomaly Flow IP	IDP	Enable
🗷 Monitor	MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
	QoS	None 💌
	NAT	Enable

OK Cancel

Step 2: Configure the parameters

Source Address: Select names of the WAN networks from the drop down list. The drop down list contains the names of all WAN networks defined in the WAN section of the Address menu. To create a new source address, please go to the LAN section under the Address menu.

Destination Address: Select names of the LAN networks from the drop down list. The drop down list contains the names of IP mapping addresses specified in the **Mapped IP** or the **Virtual Server** sections of **Virtual Server** menu. To create a new destination address, please go to the **Virtual Server** menu.

Service: Specified services provided by LAN network servers. These are services / application that are allowed to pass from the network to the LAN network. Choose ANY for all services.

Schedule: Select the item listed in the schedule to enable the policy to automatically execute the function in a certain time and range.

Trunk: Check to allow VPN traffic passing through.

Action: Select Permit or Deny ALL from the drop down list to allow or reject the packets travelling between the specified WAN network and Virtual Server/Mapped IP.

Traffic Log: Select Enable to enable flow monitoring.

Statistics: Select Enable to enable flow statistics.

IDP: Check to enable IDP feature.

Max. Concurrent Sessions: The maximum concurrent sessions that allows to pass through CS-1000. 0 means it is unlimited.

QoS: Select the item listed in the QoS to enable the policy to automatically execute the function in a certain time and range.

NAT: Select enable to allow WAN user or DMZ user to access LAN resource using with LAN interface's IP address.

Step 3: Click OK to add new policy or click Cancel to cancel adding new incoming policy.

Modifying Incoming Policy

Step 1: In the **Incoming** window, locate the name of policy desired to be modified and click its corresponding Modify option in the Configure field.

Step 2: In the Modify Policy window, fill in new settings.

Step 3: Click OK to save modifications or click Cancel to cancel modifications.

PLANET		
Vetworking & Communication	Policy > Incoming	
and the second		
System	Comment :	
nterface	Modify Policy	
Policy Object	Source Address	Outside_Any 🗸
► Outgoing	Destination Address	Virtual Server 1(210.66.155.90) 🗸
Incoming	Service	FTP(21) V
WAN To DMZ	Schedule	None 🗸
►LAN To DMZ ►DMZ To WAN	Trunk	None 💙
DMZ TO WAN	Action	PERMIT
ail Security	Traffic Log	Enable
)P	Statistics	Inable
nomaly Flow IP	IDP	Enable
lonitor	MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
	QoS	None 👻
	NAT	

OK Cancel

Removing an Incoming Policy

Step 1: In the **Incoming** window, locate the name of policy desired to be removed and click its corresponding [**Remove**] in the Configure field.

Step 2: In the Remove confirmation window, click Ok to remove the policy or click Cancel to cancel removing.

	Policy > Incomi	ng				
■ System	Source	Destination	Service Acti	on Option	Configure	Move
■ Interface ■ Policy Object	Outside_Any	Virtual Server1(210.66.155.90)	FTP(21)		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌
🗏 Policy						
- → Outgoing				New Entry		
_♦ Incoming						
- ♦ WAN To DMZ						
- ➡ LAN To DMZ		Microsoft Int	ernet Explore			
■ DMZ To WAN						
➡ DMZ To LAN		📿 Are	you sure you wan	t to remove ?		
📧 Mail Security						
IDP		0	Cano	el		
🗉 Anomaly Flow IP						

Pausing the Incoming Policy

Step 1. In the **Incoming** policy section, locate the name of the policy desired to be paused and click its corresponding **Pause** option in the **Configure** field.

Step 2. In the **Pause** confirmation dialogue box, click **OK** to pause the policy or click **Cancel** to cancel pausing.

	Policy > Incomi	ng								
■ System ■ Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option		Configure	Move		
Policy Object	Outside_Any	Virtual Server1(210.66.155.90)	FTP(21)	 V 	۰ 🕑		Modify Remove Pause	то 1 💌		
■ Policy 				N	w Entry					
→ Incoming → WAN To DMZ										
-⇒ LAN To DMZ		Microsoft Internet Explo	er			×				
➡ DMZ To WAN ➡ DMZ To LAN		Are you sure you want to pause ? This entry will not be effective.								
■ Mail Security ■ IDP ■ Anomaly Flow IP				Cancel]					

Step 3. When Policy is paused, administrator can modify the Policy Object without removing the Policy.

3.4.3 WAN TO DMZ & LAN TO DMZ

This section describes steps to create policies for packets and services from the WAN networks to the DMZ networks. Please follow the same procedures for LAN networks to DMZ networks.

Enter [WAN To DMZ] or [LAN To DMZ] window:

Click **WAN To DMZ** under **Policy** menu to enter the **WAN To DMZ** window. The WAN To DMZ table will show up displaying currently defined policies. Before to set up **WAN To DMZ** rule, you need to enable DMZ first.

📣 PLANET							
Vetworking & Communication	Policy > WAN To DM	z					
≡ System							
Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
Policy Object			Please specify the	e IP address of DMZ	. port		
Policy							
→ Outgoing							
→ Incoming							
-+ WAN To DMZ							
■♦ LAN To DMZ							
■● DMZ To WAN							
➡ DMZ To LAN							
🎟 Mail Security							
IDP							
🗉 Anomaly Flow IP							
🗷 Monitor							

The fields in WAN To DMZ window:

Source: Source networks, which are addresses specified in the **WAN** section of the **Address** menu, or all the WAN network addresses.

Destination: Destination networks, which are addresses specified in **DMZ** section of the **Address** menu and **Mapped IP** addresses of the **Virtual Server** menu.

Service: Services supported by servers in DMZ network.

Action: Control actions, to permit or deny packets from WAN networks to DMZ travelling

through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

Option: Specify the monitoring functions of packets from WAN network to DMZ network travelling through Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

Configure: Modify settings or remove policies.

Move: This sets the priority of the policies, number 1 being the highest priority.

Adding a new WAN To DMZ Policy:

Step 1: Click the New Entry button and the Add New Policy window will appear.

Po	olicy ≻ WAN To DMZ	
1		
e	Comment :	
bject	Add New Policy	
	Source Address	Outside_Any 🔽
Itgoing	Destination Address	DMZ_Any 💟
l i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	Service	ANY 🔽
DMZ	Schedule	None 💙
MZ	Trunk	None V
WAN		
LAN	Action	PERMIT 🔽
У	Traffic Log	Enable
	Statistics	Enable
ow IP	IDP	Enable
	MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
	QoS	None 💌
	NAT	Enable

OK Cancel

Step 2: Configure the parameters.

Source Address: Select names of the WAN networks from the drop down list. The drop down list contains the names of all WAN networks defined in the **WAN** section of the **Address** menu. To create a new source address, please go to the **LAN** section under the **Address** menu.

Destination Address: Select the name of the DMZ network from the drop down list. The drop down list contains the names of the DMZ network created in the **Address** menu. It will also contain Mapped IP addresses from the **Virtual Server** menu that were created for the DMZ network. To create a new destination address, please go to the **Virtual Server** menu. (Please refer to the sections entitled **Address** and **Virtual Server** for details)

Service: Select a service from drop down list. The drop down list will contain services defined in the **Custom** or **Group** section under the **Service** menu. These are services/application that are allowed to pass from the WAN network to the DMZ network. Choose ANY for all services. To add or modify these services, please go to the **Service** menu. (Please refer to the section entitled **Services** for details)

Schedule: Select the item listed in the schedule to enable the policy to automatically execute the function in a certain time and range.

Trunk: Check to allow VPN traffic passing through.

Action: Select Permit or Deny ALL from the drop down list to allow or reject the packets travelling from the specified WAN network to the DMZ network.

Traffic Log: Select Enable to enable flow monitoring.

Statistics: Select Enable to enable flow statistics.

IDP: Check to enable IDP feature.

Max. Concurrent Sessions: The maximum concurrent sessions that allows to pass through CS-1000. 0 means it is unlimited.

QoS: Select the item listed in the QoS to enable the policy to automatically execute the function in a certain time and range.

NAT: Select enable to allow WAN or LAN user to access DMZ resource using with DMZ interface's IP address.

Step 3: Click OK.

Modifying a WAN To DMZ policy:

Step 1: In the **WAN To DMZ** window, locate the name of policy desired to be modified and click its corresponding **Modify** option in the **Configure** field.

Step 2: In the Modify Policy window, fill in new settings.

Step 3: Click OK to do save modifications.

PLANET		
Vetworking & Communication	olicy > WAN To DMZ	
	oney - anala to DM2	
System		
Interface	Comment :	
Policy Object	Modify Policy	
Policy	Source Address	Outside_Any 👻
	Destination Address	DMZ_Any 🔽
➡ Incoming	Service	ANY
♦ WAN To DMZ	Schedule	None 🗸
➡ LAN To DMZ	 Trunk	None V
➡ DMZ To WAN		
➡ DMZ To LAN	Action	PERMIT
Mail Security	Traffic Log	Enable
IDP	Statistics	Enable
Anomaly Flow IP	IDP	Enable
Monitor	MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
	QoS	None 💌
	NAT	Enable

OK Cancel

Removing a WAN To DMZ Policy:

Step 1: In the **WAN To DMZ** window, locate the name of policy desired to be removed and click its corresponding **Remove** option in the **Configure** field.

Step 2: In the Remove confirmation pop-up box, click OK to remove the policy.

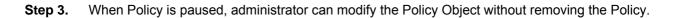
PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy > WAN To I	DMZ					
🗷 System	0	Destination	Ormána	0.41.0.11	Outlos		Maura
🗉 Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
🗉 Policy Object	Outside_Any	DMZ_Any(Routing)	ANY	1 V		Modify Remove Pause	То 1 💌
■ Policy							
→ Outgoing					New Entry		
→ Incoming							
→ WAN To DMZ							
→ LAN To DMZ		Micros	oft Interne	et Explore	er 🔀		
→ DMZ To WAN							
DMZ To LAN		?	Are you s	ure you wa	nt to remove ?		
🎟 Mail Security							
IDP 🖉			OK	Can	cel		
🗉 Anomaly Flow IP							

Pausing the Incoming Policy

Step 1. In the **WAN to DMZ** or **LAN to DMZ** policy section, locate the name of the policy desired to be paused and click its corresponding **Pause** option in the **Configure** field.

Step 2. In the **Pause** confirmation dialogue box, click **OK** to pause the policy or click **Cancel** to cancel pausing.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Policy > WAN To I	DMZ					
🗷 System					A 11		
🗉 Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
🗉 Policy Object	Outside_Any	DMZ_Any(Routing)	ANY	 ✓ 		Modify Remove Pause	То 1 💌
E Policy							
→ Outgoing					New Entry		
_♦ Incoming							
→ WAN To DMZ							
-++ LAN To DMZ		Microsoft Internet	Explorer				
→ DMZ To WAN							
DMZ To LAN		🔹 Are you su	re you want t	o pause ? T	his entry will not be effe	ective.	
📧 Mail Security							
IDP			ОК	Car	icel		
🖬 Anomaly Flow IP							



3.4.4 DMZ TO WAN & DMZ TO LAN

This section describes steps to create policies for packets and services from DMZ networks to WAN networks. Please follow the same procedures for DMZ networks to LAN networks.

Entering the DMZ To WAN window:

Click **DMZ To WAN** under **Policy** menu and the **DMZ To WAN** table appears displaying currently defined **DMZ To WAN** policies.

	_ Policy > DMZ To WA	N					
T Pustors							
■ System ■ Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
🗷 Policy Object							
🗏 Policy			Ne	ew Entry			
■● Outgoing							
→ Incoming							
-+ WAN To DMZ							
→ LAN To DMZ							
→ DMZ To WAN							
L⇒ DMZ To LAN							

The fields in the DMZ To WAN window are:

Source: Source network addresses which are specified in the **DMZ** section of the **Address** window.

Destination: Destination networks, which is the WAN network address

Service: Services supported by Servers of WAN networks.

Action: Control actions, to permit or deny packets from the DMZ network to WAN networks travelling through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

Option: Specify the monitoring functions on packets from the DMZ network to WAN networks travelling through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

Configure: Modify settings or remove policies

Move: This sets the sequence of the policies, number 1 being the first policy to proceed.

Adding a DMZ To WAN Policy:

Step 1: Click the New Entry button and the Add New Policy window will appear.

	Policy > DMZ To WAN	
System		
Interface	Comment :	
Policy Object	Add New Policy	
Policy	Source Address	DMZ_Any 💌
-	Destination Address	Outside_Any 🔽
-⇒ Incoming	Service	ANY 💌
-⇒ WAN To DMZ	Schedule	None 🔽
➡ LAN To DMZ	Authentication User	None 🗸
-> DMZ To WAN		
-⇒ DMZ To LAN	Trunk	None 💌
Mail Security	Action, WAN Port	PERMIT ALL
IDP	Traffic Log	Enable
Anomaly Flow IP	Statistics	Enable
Monitor	IDP	Enable
	Content Blocking	Enable
	MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
	QoS	None 🔽

Step 2: Configure the parameters.

Source Address: Select the name of the DMZ network from the drop down list. The drop down list will contain names of DMZ networks defined in **DMZ** section of the **Address** menu. To add a new source address, please go to the **DMZ** section under the **Address** menu.

Destination Address: Select the name of the WAN network from the drop down list. The drop down list lists names of addresses defined in **WAN** section of the **Address** menu. To add a new destination address, please go to **WAN** section of the **Address** menu.

Service: Select a service from drop down list. The drop down list will contain services defined in the **Custom** or **Group** section under the **Service** menu. These are services/application that are allowed to pass from the DMZ network to the WAN network. Choose ANY for all services. To add or modify these services, please go to the **Service** menu.

Schedule: Select the item listed in the schedule to enable the policy to automatically execute the function in a certain time and range.

Authentication User: Select the item listed in the Authentication User to enable the policy to automatically execute the function in a certain time and range.

Trunk: Check to allow VPN traffic passing through.

Action: Select Permit or Deny ALL from the drop down list to allow or reject the packets travelling from the specified DMZ network to the WAN network.

Traffic Log: Select Enable to enable flow monitoring.

Statistics: Select Enable to enable flow statistics.

IDP: Check to enable IDP feature.

Content Blocking: Select Enable to enable Content Blocking.

Max. Concurrent Sessions: The maximum concurrent sessions that allows to pass through CS-1000. 0 means it is unlimited.

QoS: Select the item listed in the QoS to enable the policy to automatically execute the function in a certain time and range.

Step 3: Click OK to add new policy or click Cancel to cancel adding.

Modifying a DMZ To WAN policy:

- **Step 1:** In the DMZ To WAN window, locate the name of policy desired to be modified and click its corresponding Modify option in the Configure field.
- Step 2: In the Modify Policy window, fill in new settings.

NOTE: To change or add selections in the drop-down list, go to the section where the selections are setup. (Source Address \rightarrow DMZ of Address; Destination Address \rightarrow WAN, Service \rightarrow Pre-defined Service, Custom or Group under Service.)

Step 3: Click OK to save modifications or click Cancel to cancel modifications.

PLANET		
Vetworking & Communication	icy > DMZ To WAN	
🗉 System		
📧 Interface	Comment :	
📧 Policy Object	Modify Policy	
E Policy	Source Address	DMZ_Any 🔽
-→ Outgoing	Destination Address	Outside_Any 🔽
→ Incoming	Service	ANY
→ WAN To DMZ	Schedule	None 🗸
-→ LAN To DMZ	Authentication User	None 🗸
→ DMZ To WAN		
L⇒ DMZ To LAN	Trunk	None 💌
🎟 Mail Security	Action, WAN Port	PERMIT ALL
IDP	Traffic Log	Enable
🗷 Anomaly Flow IP	Statistics	Enable
📧 Monitor	IDP	Enable
	Content Blocking	Enable
	MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
	QoS	None 💌



Removing a DMZ To WAN Policy:

Step 1. In the **DMZ To WAN** window, locate the name of policy desired to be removed and click its corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.

Step 2. In the Remove confirmation dialogue box, click OK.

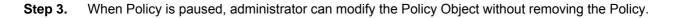
	Policy > DMZ 1	Fo WAN						
🗷 System								
🎟 Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	_	Configure	Move
🗉 Policy Object	DMZ_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	 ✓ 			Modify Remove Pause	То 1 💌
■ Policy								
→ Outgoing					New E	ntry		
→ Incoming								
→ WAN To DMZ								
-+ LAN To DMZ			Microsoft	Internet	Explorer	\times		
■ DMZ To WAN								
► DMZ To LAN			2.	Are you sur	e you want to remov	e?		
🏾 Mail Security								
IDP				ОК	Cancel			
🗉 Anomaly Flow IP								

Pausing the DMZ to WAN or DMZ to LAN Policy

Step 1. In the **DMZ to WAN** or **DMZ to LAN** policy section, locate the name of the policy desired to be paused and click its corresponding **Pause** option in the **Configure** field.

Step 2. In the **Pause** confirmation dialogue box, click **OK** to pause the policy or click **Cancel** to cancel pausing.

PLANET Hetworking & Communication	Policy > DMZ T	To WAN					
🗉 System							
🗉 Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Option	Configure	Move
🗉 Policy Object	DMZ_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	1 V		Modify Remove Pause	То 1 💌
Policy							
→ Outgoing					New Entry		
→ Incoming							
-+ WAN To DMZ							
-+ LAN To DMZ		Microsoft	Internet Ex	plorer			
→ DMZ To WAN							
DMZ TO LAN		₽	re you sure yo	ou want to p	ause ? This entry will not be	e effective.	
🎟 Mail Security							
IDP				ОК	Cancel		
🗉 Anomaly Flow IP							



3.5 Mail Security

This section provides the Administrator to configure Mail Security rule for protecting client PC from virus and spam mail attacking. Meanwhile, CS-1000 provides the ability to update virus pattern by schedule or manually, and it also provides auto-learning system to raise the rate of spam mail judging. For more detail information please check the related chapter.

3.5.1 Configure

About the Mail Security Configure function, it means the dealing standard towards mail of CS-1000. In this chapter, it is defined as Setting and Mail Relay.

Setting:

Define the required fields of setting:

Scanned Mail Setting: Setup to deal with the mail size in order to judge the mail should be scanned or not.

Unscanned Mail Setting: If the mail does not be scanned via CS-1000, it can be marked an unscanned message in the mail subject. For example, if the mail size is larger than the **Scanned Mail Setting**, when you receive mail you will find out the subject with the mark "Unscanned".

	Mail Security > Configure > Setting
🗉 System	
🗉 Interface	Scanned Mail Setting
🖬 Policy Object	The scanned spam mail size is less than H28 KBytes (10 - 512 KBytes)
🗉 Policy	The scanned virus mail size is less than 128 KBytes (10 - 512 KBytes)
🗏 Mail Security	
∃ Configure	Unscanned Mail Setting
L⇒ Setting	Add the message to the subject lineUnscanned
L⇒ Mail Relay	
' Anti-Spam	OK Cancel

When receive unscanned mail, it will add the tag in front of the e-mail subject.

🚑 Inbox - Outlook Express				_ & ×
File Edit View Tools Messag	ye Help			
New Mail Reply Reply All	Forward Print Delete	Send(Recv Addresses Find		
🖘 Inbox				
Folders X	1 8 7 From	Same	Received	
Outlook Express Coal Folders Coal Folders Coal Folders Coal Coal Folders Coal Folders Coal Folders Coal Sent Items Coal Sent Coal Sent Items Coal Sent Coal Sent Items Coal Sent Coal Sent Co	<u></u> Mr Heckathome	Unscanned Magmet	9/16/2004 7:29 AM	
Contacts ▼ × There are no contacts to display. Click on Contacts to create a new contact.				
1 message(s), 0 unvead			R Working Online	

Mail Relay: After scanning the mails that sent to Internal Mail Server by **Anti-Spam** and **Anti-Virus** function of CS-1000, then to setup the relevant setting in **Mail Relay** function. For the examples below you can understand more about how to configure your setting.

Example 1: To setup CS-1000 as Gateway (Mail Server in DMZ, Transparent Mode)

Preparation:

WAN Port IP: 61.11.11.11

Mail Server IP: 61.11.11.12

Map the DNS Domain Name that apply from ISP (planet.com.tw) to DNS Server IP (setup MX record is Mail Server IP)

When external sender sends mail to the recipient account of the planet.com.tw domain, add the following Mail Relay setting:

STEP 1 . Add the following setting in Mail Relay function of Configure:

- Select Domain Name of Internal Mail Server
- Domain Name of Mail Server: Enter the Domain Name
- IP Address of Mail Server: Enter the IP address that Mail Server's domain name mapped to.

Mail Relay setting is complete. The external mails send to planet.com.tw that will be received by CS-1000 and redirect to the mail server after filtering.

	Mail Security > Configure > Mail Relay		
≖ System			
🇉 Interface	💿 Domain N	lame of Internal Mail Server	
🗉 Policy Object	O Allowed I	External IP of Mail Relay	
🗉 Policy	Add Domain Name		
🗏 Mail Security	Domain Name of Mail Server	planet.com.tw	(ex:mail.my_domain.com)
⊟ Configure	IP Address of Mail Server	61.11.11.12	(ex: 61.217.22.30)
→ Setting			
L⇒ Mail Relay			OK Cancel
I Anti-Spam			On Cancer

Example 2: To setup CS-1000 between the original Gateway and Mail Server (Mail Server in DMZ, Transparent Mode)

Preparation: The Original Gateway's LAN Subnet: 172.16.1.0/16 WAN Port IP: 61.11.11.11 CS-1000's WAN Port IP: 172.16.1.12 Mail Server IP: 172.16.1.13 Map the DNS Domain Name (planet.com.tw) to DNS Server IP (setup MX record is Mail Server IP) When LAN (172.16.1.0/16) users send mail from the sender account of planet.com.tw mail server to the recipient account in external mail server, the configuration should need to add the following mail relay setting:

STEP 1 . Add the first setting in Mail Relay function of Configure:

- Select Domain Name of Internal Mail Server
- Domain Name of Mail Server: Enter the Domain Name
- IP Address of Mail Server: Enter the IP address that Mail Server's domain name mapped to.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Mail Security > Configure > Mail Relay		
📧 System			
■ Interface	 Domain 	Name of Internal Mail Server	
🗉 Policy Object	O Allowed	d External IP of Mail Relay	
🗉 Policy	Add Domain Name		
⊫ Mail Security	Domain Name of Mail Server	planet.com.tw	(ex: mail.my_domain.com)
⊟ Configure	IP Address of Mail Server	172.16.1.13	(ex: 61.217.22.30)
_♦ Setting			(0.01211.22.00)
L⇒ Mail Relay			OK Cancel
' Anti-Spam			On Gancer

STEP 2 . Add the second setting in Mail Relay function of Configure:

- Select Allowed External IP of Mail Relay
- IP Address: Enter the IP Address of external sender
- Enter the Netmask
- Complete Mail Relay setting

PLANET Vetworking & Communication	Mail Security > Configure > Mail Relay		
🗉 System			
🗉 Interface		Name of Internal Mail Server	
🗉 Policy Object	 Allowed 	External IP of Mail Relay	
🗉 Policy	Add IP Address		
■ Mail Security	IP Address	61.11.11.11 (ex: 202.24.193.138)	
E Configure	Netmask	255.255.255.255 (ex: 255.255.248)	Ī.
_ ⇒ Setting			۰.
📥 Mail Relay		OKCancel	1
∃ Anti-Spam			

Example 3: The Headquarters setup CS-1000 as Gateway (Mail Server in DMZ, Transparent Mode) to make the Branch office's employees can send mails via Headquarters' Mail Server

Preparation: WAN Port IP of CS-1000: 61.11.11.11 Mail Server IP: 61.11.11.12 WAN Port IP of the Branch office's Firewall: 211.22.22.22 Map the DNS Domain Name (planet.com.tw) to DNS Server IP (setup MX record is Mail Server IP) When the branch office's users send mail to the external mail server's recipient account from mail server's sender account of planet.com.tw, add the following Mail Relay setting:

STEP 1 . Add the first setting in Mail Relay function of Configure:

- Select Domain Name of Internal Mail Server
- Domain Name of Mail Server: Enter the Domain Name
- IP Address of Mail Server: Enter the IP address that Mail Server's domain name mapped to.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Mail Security > Configure > Mail Relay		
👅 System			
🗉 Interface	Obmain	Name of Internal Mail Server	
🗷 Policy Object		d External IP of Mail Relay	
🗷 Policy	Add Domain Name		
⊫ Mail Security	Domain Name of Mail Server	planet.com.tw	(ex:mail.my_domain.com)
E Configure	IP Address of Mail Server	61.11.11.12	(ex: 61.217.22.30)
_♦ Setting			(0.0121122.00)
L⇒ Mail Relay			OK Cancel
' Anti-Spam			on ouncer

STEP 2 . Add the second setting in Mail Relay function of Configure:

- Select Allowed External IP of Mail Relay
- IP Address: Enter the IP Address of external sender
- Enter the Netmask
- Complete Mail Relay setting

	Mail Security > Configure > Mail Relay		
I System	2		
🗉 Interface	O Dom	ain Name of Internal Mail Server	
🗉 Policy Object	 Allov 	wed External IP of Mail Relay	
🗉 Policy	Add IP Address		
■ Mail Security	IP Address	211.22.22.22	(ex: 202.24.193.138)
⊟ Configure	Netmask	255.255.255.255	(ex: 255.255.255.248)
→ Setting			
L⇒ Mail Relay			OK Cancel
≇ Anti-Spam			Un Valicer

3.5.2 Anti-Spam

CS-1000 can filter the e-mails that are going to send to the mail server of enterprise, in order to make sure the e-mail account that communicates with outside won't receive a mass advertisement or Spam mail. Meanwhile, it can reduce the burden of mail server. Also can prevent the users to pick up the message he/she needs from a mass of useless mails; or delete the needed mail mistakenly while deleting mails. It will raise the work efficiency of the employees and will not lose the important information of enterprise.

In this chapter, we will have the detailed illustration about Anti-Spam:

3.5.2.1 Setting

The Administrator can choose the inspection way of the mails, where the mail server is placed in Internal (LAN or DMZ) or External (WAN). CS-1000 also can inspect all of the mails that are sent to the enterprise, and add a score tag or message to the subject line of Spam mail while it exceeds the standard. Meanwhile, it supports to check sender address in blacklist of anti-spam website to determine if it is spam mail or not.

S PLHNE I	
Retworking & Commanication	Mail Security > Anti-Spam > Setting
🗷 System	
📧 Interface	Spam Setting
📧 Policy Object	Enable Anti-Spam
I Policy	The Mail Server is placed in Internal (LAN or DMZ) (Please set Mail Relay first)
■ Mail Security	External (WAN)
Ξ Configure	The threshold score of spam mail is 5 💌
⊒ Anti-Spam	Add the message to the subject linespam (Max. 256 characters)
L⇒ Setting	Check spam fingerprint (Use TCP port : 2703 and UDP port : 53 to connect database server) Test
=⇒ Bule	Enable Bayesian filtering (Bayesian filtering works until database has at least 200 spams and 200 hams)
-⇒ Whitelist	Check sender account
-⇒ Blacklist	Check sender IP address in RBL (Use UDP port : 53 to connect DNS server) Test
→ Training	Add score tag to the subject line
Spam Mail	
± Anti-Virus	Action of Spam Mail
	Internal Mail Server:
	Delete the spam mail
Anomaly Flow IP	Deliver to the recipient
🎟 Monitor	Forward to : (ex: user@mydomain.com)
	External Mail Server:
	☑ Deliver to the recipient (Always enable)
	OK Cancel

Definition:

Enable Anti-Spam: Select to enable Anti-Spam function.

The Mail Server is placed in Internal (LAN or DMZ) or External (WAN): Select to choose the location of the mail server. In order to enable Anti-Spam feature in Internal Mail server, administrator must configure Mail Relay setting first.

The threshold score of spam mail is: CS-1000 allows the Administrator to decide the threshold to be the standard of judging the spam mail.

Add the message to the subject line: If the mail has been judged to the spam mail, CS-1000 will add a message in the mail's subject. You can configure the message you want, by default, it will be add "---SPAM---" in the subject.

Check spam fingerprint: Select to allow CS-1000 checking spam mail with Fingerprint system.

Enable Bayesian filtering: Except to select fingerprinter system to distinguish spam mail, you also can select Bayesian filtering system to scan spam mail.

Check sender account: Select to allow CS-1000 checking sender's account when it receives the mail, if the sender's account is faked, CS-1000 will treat the mail as the spam.

Check sender IP address in RBL (Realtime Blackhole List): Select this function to allow CS-1000 checking mail with RBL list to Judge the spam mail.

Add score tag to the subject line: If select this function, all received mail will be added a score tag in the mail subject.

Action of Spam Mail: When CS-1000 filters the spam mail, there are three kinds of actions for Internal Mail Server and one action for External Mail server to arrange the spam mail:

Delete the spam mail: If select this option, the spam mail will be deleted without any notification.

Deliver to the recipient: Pass the mail to the recipient, and add a "SPAM" in the mail subject. This function is available for Internal and External Mail Server.

Forward to: Select to forward spam mail to a specific mail account; that can be easily to manage the spam mail.

Configure an Anti- Spam setting

After setup the relevant settings in **Mail Relay** function of **Configure**, add the following settings in this function:

- 1. The Mail Server is placed in Internal (LAN or DMZ)
- 2. The threshold score: Enter 5
- 3. Add the message to the subject line: Enter --- spam---
- 4. Select the spam mail filtering system to enable the Anti-spam function
- 5. Select Add score tag to the subject line
- 6. Select **Deliver to the recipient**
- 7. Click OK.

3.5.2.2 Rule

The Multi-Homing Security Gateway's Administrator may use the rule setting to classify the spam mail based on a certain condition. The rule also can allow CS-1000 to record the mail type by auto-learning system in order to judge the spam mail.

Click on **Mail Security** in the menu bar, then click on **Rule** below the **Anti-Spam** menu. The Rule window will appear.

	Mail Security > Anti-S	pam > Rule				
🗉 System	Dula Nama	AL	0 - 1	A summants	0	Maura
🖬 Interface	Rule Name	Classification	Action	Comments	Configure	Move
🖬 Policy Object				-		
🖬 Policy			New Er	ntry		
■ Mail Security						
■ Configure						
⊟ Anti-Spam						
→ Setting						
_♦ Rule						
-+ Whitelist						
_♦ Blacklist						
■ Training						
L⇒ Spam Mail						

Below is the information needed for setting up the Rule:

- Rule Name: The name of the custom spam mail determination rule.
- **Comments:** To explain the meaning of the custom rule.
- Combination:

And: It must be fit in with all of the custom mail rules that would be considered as spam mail or ham mail.

Or: Only be fit in with one of the custom mail rule that would be considered as spam mail or ham mail.

• Classification:

Spam: It will classify the mails that correspond to the rule as spam mail.

Ham (Non-Spam): It will classify the mails that correspond to the rule as ham mail.

- Action: This function will be available only when Classification is set as Spam. You can choose the action to Delete spam mail, Deliver to the recipient, Forward to another mail account, or the Same as Spam Setting.
- Auto-Training: If Classification is set as Spam and enable this function, the mails that correspond to this rule will be trained to identify as spam mail; or if Classification is set as Ham (Non-Spam) and enable this function, the mails correspond to this rule will be trained to identify as ham (non-spam) mail according to the setting in Training function
- Item: The items use to judge the spam mail according to Header, Body and Size of the mail. The packet Header includes: Received, Envelope-To, Form, To, Cc, Bcc, Subject, Sender, Reply-To, Errors-To, Message-ID, Date, Header, Body, Attach File Name and Size (Kbytes).
- Condition:

Item set to Header or Body: The available conditions are: Contains, Does Not Contain, Is Equal To, Is Not Equal To, Starts With, Ends With, Exist and Does Not Exist.

Item set to Size: The available conditions are: More Than, Is Equal To, Is Not Equal To and Less Than.

• Pattern: Enter the relevant value in Item and Condition field. For example: From Item and use Contains Condition, and enter "josh" as a characteristics. When the sender and receiver's mail account has "josh" inside and then it will be considered as spam mail or ham mail

Adding a new Rule

- Step 1: Click on the New Entry button and the Rule window will appear.
- **Step 2:** Fill in the appropriate settings for the related information.
- Step 3: Click OK to save the policy or Cancel to cancel.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Mail Security > Anti-Spam > Rule			
🗉 System				_
🗉 Interface	Rule Name :		Comments :	
🎟 Policy Object	Combination : And 💌		Classification : Spam 🛛 👻	
🖬 Policy	Action : Delete spam mail		Auto-Training : Disable 🗸	
■ Mail Security	Item	Condition	Pattern	Configure
■ Configure	Received	Contains 🗸		Next Row
⊟ Anti-Spam	Received	Contains		Mext Now
→ Setting				
_♦ Rule				OK Cancel
-+ Whitelist				
■● Blacklist				
→ Training				
L⇒ Spam Mail				

Modifying a Rule

- Step 1: In the Rule window, find the policy to be modified and click the corresponding **Modify** option in the **Configure** field.
- **Step 2:** Make the necessary changes needed.
- Step 3: Click OK to save changes or click on Cancel to cancel modifications.

Removing a Rule

- Step 1: In the Rule window, find the policy to be removed and click the corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.
- **Step 2:** A confirmation pop-up box will appear, click **OK** to remove the Host Table or click **Cancel**.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Mail Security > Anti-S	pam > Rule				
🖬 System						
	Rule Name	Classification	Action	Comments	Configure	Move
Interface Policy Object	test	Spam	Delete spam mail		Modify Remove	то 1 💌
🗉 Policy						
⊫ Mail Security			New En	try		
■ Configure						
⊟ Anti-Spam						
L⇒ Setting		Microso	ft Internet Explorer 💦 🚪	<u><</u>		
_⇒ Rule		?				
_⇒ Whitelist		$\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{\mathbf{$	Are you sure you want to remove	?		
_⇒ Blacklist		_				
→ Training			OK Cancel			
L⇒ Spam Mail						
∃ Anti-Virus						

3.5.2.3 Whitelist

To determine the mail comes from specific mail address that can send to the recipient without being restricted.

Below is the information needed for setting up the Whitelist

- Whitelist: Specify the key word or with wildcard for the Whitelist field.
- Direction:

From: To judge the sending address of the mail.

To: To judge the receiving address of the mail.

• Auto-Training: Select enable to allow Auto-Training system updating the CS-1000's database.

Adding a new Whitelist

- Step 1: Click on the New Entry button and the Whitelist window will appear.
- **Step 2:** Fill in the appropriate settings for the related information..
- Step 3: Click OK to save the policy or Cancel to cancel.

PLANET Retworking & Communication				
	Mail Security > Anti-Spam > Whitelist			
System				
Interface	Export Whitelist To Client 📗	Download		
	Import Whitelist Form Client		Browse OK (Max size 10	0 KBytes)
Policy Object	Direction	Whitelist	Auto-Training	Configu
Policy			······	
Mail Security				
Configure			New Entry	
Anti-Spam				
-⇒ Setting				
_♦ Rule				
_♦ Whitelist				
■● Blacklist				
+ Training				
_♦ Spam Mail				

Modifying a Whitelist

- **Step 1:** In the **Whitelist** window, find the policy to be modified and click the corresponding **Modify** option in the **Configure** field.
- Step 2: Make the necessary changes needed.
- **Step 3:** Click **OK** to save changes or click on **Cancel** to cancel modifications.

	Mail Security > Anti-Spam > Whitelist		
System			
Interface	Modify Whitelist		
Policy Object	Whitelist	hotmail	(ex: *yahoo*, *: wildcard)
Policy	Direction	To 💌	
Mail Security	Auto-Training	Disable 🗸	
■ Configure			
⊒ Anti-Spam			OK Can
_♦ Setting			
-⇒ Rule			
_➡ Whitelist			
_⇒ Blacklist			
_⇒ Training			
🗅 🕈 Spam Mail			

Removing a Whitelist

Step 1: In the Rule window, find the policy to be removed and click the corresponding Remove option in the Configure field.

Step 2: A confirmation pop-up box will appear, click OK to remove the Host Table or click Cancel.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Mail Security > Anti-Spam > Whiteli:	st		
System				
I Interface	Export Whitelist To Cli			-
Policy Object	Import Whitelist Form		Browse	(Max size 100 KBytes)
Policy	Direction	Whitelist	Auto-Training	Configure
Mail Security	From	planet		Modify Remove
■ Configure	То	hotmail		Modify Remove
= E Anti-Spam	_			
→ Setting	<u></u>	licrosoft Internet	Explorer 🛛 🔀	
_♦ Rule		•	ſ	
_♦ Whitelist		😲 Are you sur	e you want to remove ?	
■● Blacklist				
■ Training		ОК	Cancel	
🗕 🕈 Spam Mail	L			
± Anti-Virus				

Export Whitelist To Client

- **Step 1:** Press **Download** button to save the Whitelist as a file. The file format is *.csv type.
- **Step 2:** Select the destination path you want to save the file, then press **Save** to save the file.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Mail Security > Anti-Spam > Whitelist	
System Interface Policy Object Policy Mail Security Configure Anti-Spam Setting Setting Setting String String String Setting Setting	Export Whitelist To Client Download File Download Do you want to open or save this file? Name: whitelist.csv Type: Microsoft Excel Comma Separated Values File, 34 b From: 192.168.10.1 Open Save Cancel While files from the Internet can be useful, some files can potentially harm your computer. If you do not trust the source, do not open or save this file. What's the risk?	< size 100 KBytes) Configure Modify Remove

Import Whitelist From Client

Step 1: Press Browse to select the file you want to import, then press OK to import file to Whitelist.

Export Whitelist To Client	Download			
Import Whitelist Form Client	C: Documents and Setting:	Browse	OK	(Max size 100 KBytes)

Note: The file can be modified first before importing to CS-1000, use Notepad program and type the data as following:

Direction,Whitelist From,planet To,hotmail

3.5.2.4 Blacklist

To determine the mail comes from specific mail address that will be filtered or restricted.

Below is the information needed for setting up the Blacklist

- Blacklist: Specify the key word or with wildcard for the Blacklist field.
- Direction:

From: To judge the sending address of the mail.

To: To judge the receiving address of the mail.

• Auto-Training: Select enable to allow Auto-Training system updating the CS-1000's database.

Adding a new Blacklist

- Step 1: Click on the New Entry button and the Blacklist window will appear.
- Step 2: Fill in the appropriate settings for the related information..

Step 3: Click OK to save the policy or Cancel to cancel.

PLANET Networking & Communication	Mail Security > Anti-Spam > Blacklist			
System nterface	Export Blacklist To Client 🚺	ownload	Browse OK (Max size 10	10 KBytes)
Policy Object Policy	Direction	Blacklist	Auto-Training	Configure
Aail Security				
Configure			New Entry	
Anti-Spam				
♦ Setting				
➡ Rule				
♦ Whitelist				
■ ● Blacklist				

Modifying a Blacklist

- Step 1: In the Blacklist window, find the policy to be modified and click the corresponding Modify option in the Configure field.
- **Step 2:** Make the necessary changes needed.
- Step 3: Click OK to save changes or click on Cancel to cancel modifications.

	Mail Security > Anti-Spam > Blacklist		
🗷 System			
🗉 Interface	Modify Blacklist		
🖬 Policy Object	Blacklist	hacker	(ex: *yahoo*, *: wildcard)
🖬 Policy	Direction	From 💌	
🗏 Mail Security	Auto-Training	Disable 🗸	
■ Configure			
⊟ Anti-Spam			OK Cancel
→ Setting			
_♦ Rule			
_♦ Whitelist			
_♦ Blacklist			

Removing a Blacklist

- **Step 1:** In the **Blacklist** window, find the policy to be removed and click the corresponding **Remove** option in the **Configure** field.
- Step 2: A confirmation pop-up box will appear, click **OK** to remove the Host Table or click **Cancel**.

	Mail Security > Anti-Spam > Blacklist	ł		
ቛ System ቛ Interface ቛ Policy Object	Export Blacklist To Clier Import Blacklist Form Cl		Browse	OK (Max size 100 KBytes)
Policy Mail Security	Direction From	Blacklist hacker	Auto-Training	Configure Modify Remove
Configure Anti-Spam Setting	M	icrosoft Internet	Explorer	
–⇒Rule –⇒Whitelist	(Are you su	re you want to remove ?	
■● Blacklist ■● Training ■● Spam Mail		ОК	Cancel	
I Anti-Virus				

Export Blacklist To Client

Step 1: Press **Download** button to save the Blacklist as a file. The file format is *.csv type.

Step 2: Select the destination path you want to save the file, then press **Save** to save the file.

	Mail Security > Anti-Spam > Blacklist	
¥ System ¥ Interface ¥ Policy Object ¥ Policy ¥ Mail Security Configure Anti-Spam ◆ Setting ◆ Rule ◆ Whitelist ◆ Blacklist ◆ Training ◆ Spam Mail Anti-Virus ¥ IDP	Export Blacklist To Client Download File Download Do you want to open or save this file? Name: blacklist.csv Type: Microsoft Excel Comma Separated Values File, 34 b From: 192.168.10.1 Open Save Cancel While files from the Internet can be useful, some files can potentially harm your computer. If you do not trust the source, do not open or save this file. What's the risk?	x size 100 KBytes) Configure Modify Remove

Import Blacklist From Client

Step 1: Press Browse to select the file you want to import, then press OK to import file to Blacklist.

Export Blacklist To Client	Download			
Import Blacklist Form Client	C:\Documents and Setting:	Browse	OK	(Max size 100 KBytes)

Note: The file can be modified first before importing to CS-1000, use Notepad program and type the data as following:

```
Direction,Whitelist
From,planet
To,hotmail
```

3.5.2.5 Training

CS-1000 provides a training system to improve the identify rate of spam, the database can be updated by manually or from the rule setting. Below is the information needed for setting up the **Training**.

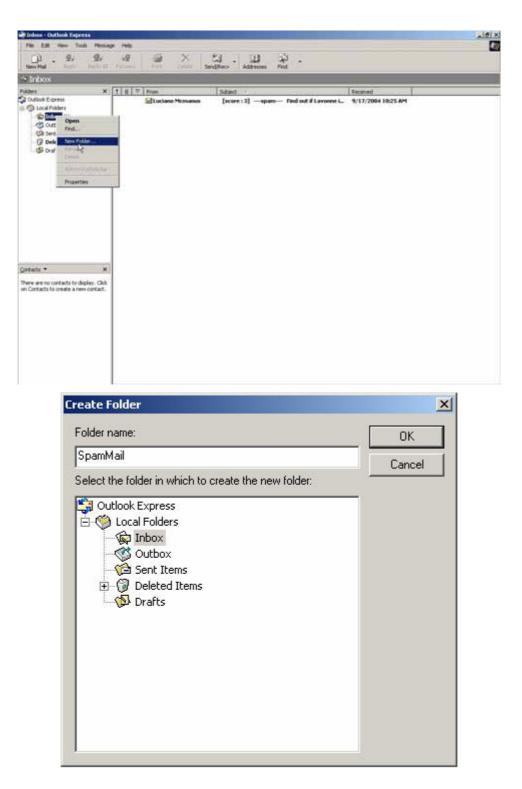
- Training Database: The System Manager can Import or Export Training Database here.
- **Spam Mail for Training:** The System Manager can import the file which is not determined as spam mail here. To raise the judgment rate of spam mail after the CS-1000 learning the file.
- **Ham Mail for Training:** The System Manager can import the file which is determined as spam mail here. To raise the judgment rate of ham mail after the CS-1000 learning the file
- Spam Account for Training: You can specify a mail account in your mail server, and redirect all the spam mail to this account. When the related configuration is set, such as **POP3 server**, **User name** and **Password**, CS-1000 will search the spam mail in this account and update the spam type to the database in a regular time.
- Ham Account for Training: You can specify a mail account in your mail server, and redirect all the ham mail to this account. When the related configuration is set, such as POP3 server, User name and Password, CS-1000 will search the ham mail in this account and update the ham type to the database in a regular time.
- **Training Time:** The System Manager can set the training time for CS-1000 to import the file per each day.

PLANET Networking & Communication		
	Mail Security > Anti-Spam > Training	
System		
Interface	Free space for training: 876 KBytes	
Policy Object	The amount of spam mail: 0	
Policy	The amount of ham mail: 0	
Mail Security	Bayesian filtering works until database has at leas	st 200 spams and 200 hams
Configure	Training Database	
E Anti-Spam	Export Training Database	Download
→ Setting	Import Training Database	Browse
_⇒ Rule	Reset Training Database	Reset Database
	Spam Mail for Training	
_♦ Blacklist	Import Spam Mail from Client	Browse
🗕 🕈 Training		
🗕 🌩 Spam Mail	Ham Mail for Training	
E Anti-Virus	Import Ham Mail from Client	Browse
IDP	Spam Account for Training	
Anomaly Flow IP	POP3 Server	(ex: my_domain.com)
Monitor	User name	(ex:spam)
	Password	(ex: 5d2#k)
	Spam account test	Account Test
	Ham Account for Training	
	POP3 Server	(ex: my_domain.com)
	User name	(ex:ham)
	Password	(ex: 5d2#k)
	Ham account test	Account Test
	Training time	
	Training database starts at 00:00 💌 / day	
	Training immediately : Training NOW	
		OK Canc

Example: How to train mail into CS-1000

STEP 1 . Create a new folder SpamMail in Outlook Express:

- Press the right key of the mouse and select **New Folder**.
- In Create Folder WebUI and enter the Folder's Name as SpamMail, and then click on OK.

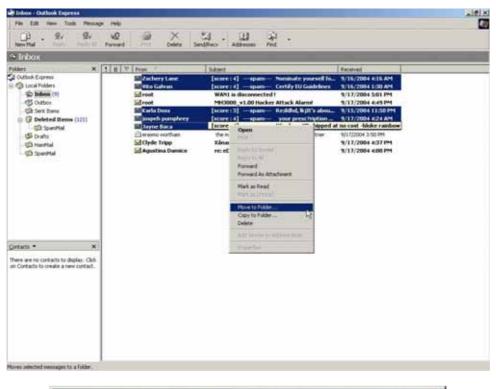


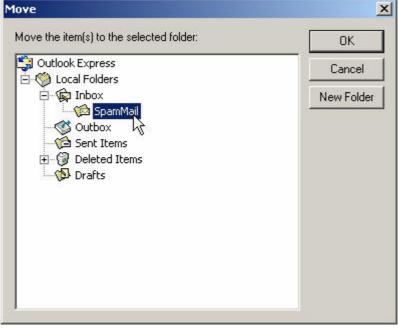
STEP 2 . In Inbox-Outlook Express, move spam mail to SpamMail Folder:

In Inbox, select all of the spam mails that do not judge correctly and press the right key of

the mouse and move to the folder.

■ In Move WebUI, select SpamMail Folder and click OK.





- STEP 3 . Compress the SpamMail Folder in Outlook Express to shorten the data and upload to CS-1000 for training:
 - Select SpamMail Folder
 - Select **Compact** function in selection of the folder

SparrMail Chillook Express File Edit raw Junis Flecks	NO HIE								al
D . Sr Sr	-9	Debte Ser	83	1.03	and a				
	C. Astroid []	Print Defeta Sav	dillaria	ASServes	Prid S				
SportMoll Art X	10.7	1	1 Mar		_	_	_		_
Outlook Denns (Coutor Patiens Coutor	1. 0	Rosetta Stabbs Rosetta Stabbs ProductTesPanticom senderitmydannain.z., Senty Lundy Budun Cerkin Sonja Hathamay Wondorfal Daly Savin. Gick Rose Clement Rose Clement No cest Laptop fin: Cine Singel Intas Singel Intas		spann Vilkor spann Spann spann Saba spann Paylo spann Online spann Huda spann Huda spann Huda spann Huda spann Huda spann Rid spann Rid	3 Megapixel Caro Mail Notice. (D1 Need software? (D p too mach for yo ordening is the g da de ways to get he	Span Halo) lick here, so Insurance pratest and loans ree 10H Haok ba57 ref tudio audietic	ir padt	Permetti 9/20/2004 2:55 (* 9/20/2004 2:55 (* 9/20/2004 2:55 (* 9/20/2004 2:52 (* 9/20/2004 2:52 (* 9/20/2004 2:51 (* 9/20/2004 2:51 (* 9/20/2004 1:52 (* 9/20/2004 2:52 (* 9/20/2004 2:53 (* 9/20/2004 2:53 (* 9/20/2004 2:53 (* 9/20/2004 2:53 (*	******
réachs • X Brander Smoldenach curs	3								
SpannMoll - Challook Express File: Edit: Views: Tools: Philip							Maring C	inine 🔥 Erro	
SpannMad - Oktlook Express File Edit Gene Tools Physics New	100 - 100 - 0	The Data	ta dilato	. All			I working C	inine 🖹 Irre	
Spanichall - Chillook Express File Edit Here Tools Plasta Teres		There is a series	*7.9eo	, H	i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i		In working C	inke 🖹 Irre	-
SpannMad - Dallook Express Face 1 Series Tools Plans Face 1 Series Series Series Series Additionals (Series Sciences (• 9	Port Divisi Sen	t d difees	AStrone	2. ·	20	Working C	orine True	
Committee Children Engineers Fair Edit New Tools Palesa Faire Committee Children Children Committee Children Children Children Children Ch	• @ #17 Norm	Pret Loniti Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	and the second second				ala
Spannfall - Chilliok Express Re Edit New Took Pissa New Color Com Color Com Color Com Color Com Color Com Color False Export	• 9 8 7 • 500 • 500 • 500	Three T Cole-Shift -E	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		ala
Committee Children Engineers Fair Edit New Tools Palesa Faire Committee Children Children Committee Children Children Children Children Ch	e g Bill 7 Rem Rom Date	Pret David Sen Pres Cole-Sult +E Ro- ane - te	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannfall - Chilliok Express Ne Edit New Took Ness New Control Serri An Control Control Serri An Control Control Fiscal Export Export	· g Bill V Rem Remain Data	Pret David Sen Pres Cole-Sult +E Ro- ane - te	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannika (Dellak Express Fac Edit Vene Tank Palas Fac Statement Same A Same A S	· g · II · Prove · Remain · Remain · Remain · Remain · Composition · Compo	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannfiller (Notlink Engines) Fair Edit Wein Tank Pilota Fair Scott Scotters Scotters Engine Statement Expert Expert Sector Scotters Jamitters South Meeting of Meeting	· g · II · Prove · Remain · Remain · Remain · Remain · Composition · Compo	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spansfall - Coollock Express File Edit New Tools Palson Service - Service - Service Service - Service - Service Expension - Service - Service Service - Service - Service	· g · II · Prove · Remain · Remain · Remain · Remain · Composition · Compo	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannflad - Chilliok Express Fais Edit Wein Tando Alexa Fain State State Comp State Same	· g · II · Prove · Remain · Remain · Remain · Remain · Composition · Compo	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Connormal of Conclusion Engineeries Free Edit Week Tools Mosca Feer Control Concern Control Concernsor Control Concernsor Control Concernsor Co	· g · II · Prove · Remain · Remain · Remain · Remain · Composition · Compo	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Connormal of Conclusion Engineeries Free Edit Week Tools Mosca Feer Control Concern Control Concernsor Control Concernsor Control Concernsor Co	· g · II · Prove · Remain · Remain · Remain · Remain · Composition · Compo	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannford - Childok Enginesis Faie Edit Weie Toolo Mosca Faier Scott - Scott - Scott - Scott Scott - Scott - Scott - Scott Scott - Scott - Sco	· g · II · Prove · Reveal · Revea	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannellad - Coldook Engineers Pare Edit Ween Tools Mosca Feren Sonnell Contention Sonnell Contention	· g · II · Prove · Reveal · Revea	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannfall - Coulork Express File Ed. New Tools Press Service States - Service Service States - Service Service States - Service File - Service States - Service Sector States - Service Social Manufacture File Service States - Service Social Manufacture File Service States - Service States - Service States - Service States - Service States - Service States - Serv	A Diale	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannellad - Coldock Express File Edit Vere Tool Missis File Control Control Control Service Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Service Control Control Service Control Control Edit	Q dill Y mm Rore Com Com	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
New Control Co	Q dill Y mm Rore Com Com	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannellad - Coldock Express File Edit Vere Tool Missis File Control Control Control Service Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Service Control Control Service Control Control Edit	Q dill Y mm Rore Com Com	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannellad - Coldock Express File Edit Vere Tool Missis File Control Control Control Service Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Service Control Control Service Control Control Edit	Q dill Y mm Rore Com Com	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannellad - Coldock Express File Edit Vere Tool Missis File Control Control Control Service Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Service Control Control Service Control Control Edit	Q dill Y mm Rore Com Com	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannfall - CAUSAA Express File Edit Wee Tools Mosc File Control - Control - Control Control - Control - Control Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Control - Con	Q dill Y mm Rore Com Com	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		
Spannellad - Coldock Express File Edit Vere Tool Missis File Control Control Control Service Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Service Control Control Service Control Control Edit	Q dill Y mm Rore Com Com	Prot David Sen	diffect	ASDroves d	Find ca		scarved		

- STEP 4 . To copy the route of SpamMail File in **Outlook Express** to convenient to upload the training to CS-1000.
 - Press the right key of the mouse in SpamMail file and select **Properties** function.
 - Copy the file address in **SpamMail Properties** WebUI.

File Edit new Junit Hester				
D . Sr Sr		Sa . Da		
• SpamMail				
And the second	1 8 97 Press Schweitzung Anderstein Stades Schweitzung	Baland Sparse Village for loss Sparse Village for loss Sparse Village for loss (Source Village) Sparse Village for although the year lossmanch? Sparse Village May the year lossmanch? Sparse Village May to get Automatic Sparse Village May to get Automati	8/19/901 5/20/2004 5/3/ 5/20/2004 5/3/	
nessape(i), 0 unviad			Moriting Online	

	SpamMail			
his folde	r contains:	2 V		
his folde	2 messages, r is stored in th		£	
	67448}\Micr	resoft\Outlee	< Express\Spam!	Mail (1) dbs Undo
			G.	Cut
				Сору
				Paste Delete
				Select Al

STEP 5 . Paste the route of copied from SpamMail file to the Spam Mail for Training field in Training function of Anti-Spam. And press OK to deliver this file to CS-1000 instantly and to learn the uploaded mail file as spam mail in the appointed time.

Training Database		
Export Training Database	Download	
Import Training Database		Browse
Reset Training Database	Reset Database	
Spam Mail for Training		
Import Spam Mail from Client		Browse
Ham Mail for Training		
Import Ham Mail from Client		Browse

Note:

- 1. The training file that uploads to CS-1000 can be any data file and not restricted in its sub-name, but the file must be ACSII form.
- 2. When the training file of CS-1000 is Microsoft Office Outlook exporting file [.pst], it has to close Microsoft Office Outlook first to start Importing.
- STEP 6. Remove all of the mails in SpamMail File in Outlook Express so that new mails can be compressed and upload to CS-1000 to training directly next time.
 - Select all of the mails in SpamMail File and press the right key of the mouse to select Delete function.
 - Make sure that all of the mails in SpamMail file had been deleted completely.

 SpamMail 	_		the second s	
NICHLARD AND CONTRACTOR				
Julies' X 20 Othok Corress 20 Othok Corress 20 Othok 20 Insofted 20 Separatial (10) - 02 Separatial (11) - 03 Separatial (12) - 03 Separatial (13) - 03 Separatial (14) - 03 Separatial (15) - 03 Separatial (16) - 03 Separatial (17) - 03 Separatial (17) - 03 Separatial (18) - 03 Separatial (18) - 03 Separatial (18) - 03 Separatial (18) - 03 Separatial (18) - 03 Separatial - 03 Separatial (18) - 03 S	1 4 V 9 1	Innertia Stubie Product TeatPanel.com Periodice TentPanel.com Sector Studies Conten Studies Content Studies Content Stu	diget	Bactwell 9/20/2004 2:53 PM 9/20/2004 2:53 PM 9/20/2004 9:03 AM 9/20/2004 9:03 AM 9/20/2004 9:03 AM 9/20/2004 9:23 PM 9/20/2004 1:23 PM 9/20/2004 1:23 PM 9/20/2004 1:23 PM 9/20/2004 1:23 PM
prtath • X		Ef negel lutasi Mitob Affens Mitob Affens Mitoba ramifez	spam	9/13/2004 3/23 MM Open Size Siz
(19 Parmett) (3 am der Ornerdonalti com				Move to Folder Capy to Folder Data to folder

Pie Edit View Tools Pieces	or 146				ald) X
(j) , 2, 2,	4 2	Sentifiers Add	Ll Al .		E
• SpamMail					
	1 0 V From	Salaset	There are no tenu in this ve-	Rentrad	
Contracts • X There are no contracts to display. Clob on Contracts to create a new contract.	(
0 message(s), 0 unvead				working Critice	1

3.5.2.6 Spam Mail

This item will show the top chart that represents the received and sent spam mail from recipient. In **Top Total Spam** report, you can choose to display the scanned mails that sent to **Internal Mail Server** or received from **External Mail Server**. It also can sort the mail according to **Recipient**, **Total Spam** and **Total Mail**.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Mail Security > An	ti-Spam > Spam Mail				
■ System						
■ Interface						External
■ Policy Object	No.	<u>Recipient</u> 🗸	<u>Total Spam</u> –	<u>Total Mail</u> 🔫	Duration	Spam %
■ Policy		No spa	m mail in the External	Mail Server		
⊫ Mail Security						
≖ Configure						
⊟ Anti-Spam						
–⇒ Setting						
–⇒ Rule						
– ⇒ Whitelist						
– ⇒ Blacklist						
-⇒ Training						
→ Spam Mail						

3.5.3 Anti-Virus

CS-1000 built-in Clam virus scanning engine can protect your LAN network from being infected virus.

3.5.3.1 Setting

	Mail Security > Anti-Virus > Setting
System Interface Policy Object Policy Mail Security Configure Anti-Spam Anti-Virus Setting → Virus Mail	Anti-Virus Setting Virus Scan Engine Disable The Mail Server is placed in Internal (LAN or DMZ) (Please set Mail Relay first) External (WAN) Add the message to the subject line (Max. 256 characters) The latest update time : 2004/7/7 (Update virus definitions every ten minutes) The newest version : 0.0 Update virus definitions immediately Use TCP port : 80 and UDP port : 53 to connect virus definition server) Update NOW
■ IDP Anomaly Flow IP Monitor	Action of Infected Mail Internal Mail Server: Delete the virus mail Deliver to the recipient Deliver a notification mail instead of the original virus mail Deliver the original virus mail Deliver to the recipient (ex: user@mydomain.com) External Mail Server: Deliver to the recipient (Always enable) Deliver to the recipient (Always enable) Deliver the original virus mail Deliver the original virus mail

Definition:

Virus Scan Engine: Select Clam to enable Anti-virus function or Select Disable to disable it.

The Mail Server is placed in Internal (LAN or DMZ) or External (WAN): Select to choose the location of the mail server.

Add the message to the subject line: If the mail has been filtered as virus mail, CS-1000 will add a message in the mail's subject.

Update virus definitions immediately: Press Update NOW to update CS-1000 virus database.

Action of Infected Mail: When CS-1000 filters the infected mail, there are three kinds of actions for Internal Mail Server and one action for External Mail server to arrange the infected mail:

Delete the virus mail: If select this option, the virus mail will be deleted without any notification.

Deliver to the recipient: This action is available for Internal Mail Server and External Mail Server setting.

Deliver a notification mail instead of the original virus mail: Recipient will only receive a notification, and virus mail will be deleted.

Deliver the original virus mail: Recipient will receive the original virus mail, the virus will not be arranged, but CS-1000 will add a "VIRUS" message at the subject.

Forward to: You can configure CS-1000 to forward virus mail to a specific mail account; it will be easily to manage the infected mail.

3.5.3.2 Virus Mail

This item will show the top chart that represents the received and sent virus mail from recipient. In **Top Total Virus** report, you can choose to display the scanned mails that sent to **Internal Mail Server** or received from

External Mail Server. It also can sort the mail according to Recipient, Total Virus and Total Mail.

PLANET Reflecting & Communication	Mail Security > A	nti-Virus > Virus Mail				
≖ System ≖ Interface						(External)
Policy Object	No.	<u>Recipient</u> –	<u>Total Virus</u> 🗸	<u>Total Mail</u> 🔫	Duration	Virus %
■ Polic y		No viru	us mail in the External I	Mail Server !		
⊫ Mail Security						
≖ Configure						
≖ Anti-Spam						
⊟ Anti-Virus						
-⇒ Setting -⇒ Virus Mail						

3.6 IDP

CS-1000 can aim at abnormal traffic and packets content to inspect, alert, and handle by the obstructive, separateness, interference, or alarm to administrator, to prevent suspicious program invades the host. So when CS-1000 detects the attack behavior come from internal or external, it can provide the protection to network and obstruct to the attack behavior, let the network can still work normally and increase the information transmission security.

3.6.1 Setting

- It can update signature definitions for every 120 minutes. Or update signature definitions immediately. It will show the update time and version at the same time.
- It can detect virus to the file which have no encryption and compression.

Note: User can test if CS-1000 can connect to IDP server to update the signature definitions on internet by **Test** function.

Set default action of all signatures:

- According to attack behavior's threat to divide: High Risk, Medium Risk, and Low Risk. The different risk attack behavior can be handled by the pass, drop, and log action.
 - Add the following settings in this function:
 - 1. Select **Enable Anti-Virus** (Disable Anti-virus function will abate the IDP function in virus protection).
 - 2. Click OK.
 - 3. High Risk: Select drop and log function.
 - 4. Medium Risk: Select drop and log function.
 - 5. Low Risk: Select pass and log function.

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Enable **IDP** function in policy.

	IDP > Configure > Setting						
🗷 System							
🗉 Interface	IDP Setting						
📧 Policy Object	The latest update time	e : 06/04/10 02:23:03 ((Update signature de	finitions every 120 minutes)			
🗷 Policy	The newest version	The newest version : 0.0.7 (Signature definitions updated at 05/05/03 00:00:00)					
🗷 Mail Security	Update signature def	Update signature definitions immediately (Use TCP port : 80 and UDP port : 53)					
l IDP							
∃ Configure	🔽 Enable Anti-Viru	s (for HTTP, FTP, P2P,	IM, NetBIOS)				
L⇒ Setting							
∃ Signature					OK Cancel		
∃ IDP Report							
📧 Anomaly Flow IP	Set default action						
🗷 Monitor	High Risk	Drop 🚩	🗹 Log	([Pass] recommended)			
Morritor	Medium Risk	Drop 🔽	🗹 Log	([Pass] recommended)			
	Low Risk	Pass 💌	🗹 Log	([Pass] recommended)			
					OK Cancel		

 When the attack behavior matches the signature, CS-1000 will produce log as follows in Log function of IDP Report.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	IDP > IDP Report > Log						
System							
Interface	Time	Event	Signature Class.	Interface	Attack IP	Victim IP:Port	
Policy Object			No Data				
Policy							
Mail Security							
IDP							
± Configure							
Signature							
E IDP Report							
→ Log							

3.6.2 Signature

Provide relative compare rule to different attack behavior, include three sections: **Anomaly, Pre-defined** and **Custom**.

Anomaly:

Anomaly signature can allow user to define the signature, in order to detect and prevent the irregular attack behavior. Take **Syn Flood** as the example:

Definition:

Enable: Check to enable the protection for Syn Flood signature.

Max. Threshold \Box Pkts / Sec: Configure the value to define the Syn Flood signature.

Blocking Time: Set up the timing to block the attacked connection. The function is available when the **Action** sets to **Drop**.

Action: When the packets match the signature, select Pass to pass the packets, or select Drop to discard

the packets.

Log: Check Log function to record the log in IDP Report.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	IDP > Signature > Anoma	aly		
- Oustan				
🗷 System		Modify Anomaly De	etect Setting (syn flood)
🗉 Interface			cicci ociling (5911 1000 y
🗷 Policy Object		🗹 Enable		
🗉 Policy		Max. Threshold	200	Pkts / Sec (Downstream 1024 Kbps, 200 recommended)
🎟 Mail Security		Blocking Time	60	Seconds
■ IDP		Action	Drop 💌	Log
■ Configure			brop .	
🖻 Signature				OK Cancel
_⇒ Anomaly				on ouncer
Pre-defined				
L♦ Custom				

Pre-defined:

Pre-defined signatures can detect and prevent to intrusive pattern which can be discovered at present.

These signatures can not be modified and deleted.

Definition:

Action: Select Pass to pass the packets, or select Drop to discard the packets.

Log: Check Log function to record the log in IDP Report.

	IDP > Signature > Pre-defined
T Oustana	
🗷 System	Modify Signature Action (Backdoor)
🗉 Interface	
🗉 Policy Object	Pass 💌 📃 Log
🗉 Policy	
🗷 Mail Security	OK
■ IDP	
■ Configure	
🖻 Signature	
→ Anomaly	
→ Pre-defined	
L → Custom	

Custom:

Custom signatures can allow user to create the signature according to their requirement, works to detect and prevent the internal and external attack behavior which are not including in **Pre-defined** signatures.

Definition:

Name: The System Manager can name the signature.

Protocol: Select the protocol which wants to be detected and prevented, it can be divided: TCP, UDP, ICMP and IP.

Source Port: Configure the port number that is used to attack the PC. (The range can be from 0 to 65535).

Destination Port: Configure the port number that the client PC is used to be attacked.

Risk: Define the threat about attack packets.

Action: Select Pass to pass the packets, or select Drop to discard the packets.

Log: Check Log function to record the log in IDP Report.

Content: Define the attack packets content.

Networking & Communication	IDP > Signature > Custom	
■ System		
■ Oystenn ■ Interface	Add New Signature	
🗉 Policy Object	Name	
🗉 Policy	Protocol	
🎟 Mail Security	Source Port	0:65535
層 IDP	Destination Port	
■ Configure	Risk	High 🔽
⊟ Signature	Action	
→ Anomaly	Action	Pass V Log
→ Pre-defined	Content	
L+ Custom		

EX. Use Pre-defined and Custom signature settings to detect and prevent attack behaviors

STEP 1. Enter the following setting in **Setting** of **Configure** function.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	IDP > Configure > Setting						
■ System	IDP Setting						
🎟 Interface	-						
🗉 Policy Object	The latest update tin	The latest update time : 06/04/06 08:13:44 (Update signature definitions every 120 minutes)					
🗷 Policy	The newest version : 0.0.7 (Signature definitions updated at 05/05/03 00:00:00)						
🎟 Mail Security	Update signature definitions immediately (Use TCP port : 80 and UDP port : 53)						
IE IDP					<u> </u>		
🖻 Configure	🔽 Enable Anti-Viri	us (for HTTP, FTP, P2P,	IM, NetBIOS)				
L⇒ Setting							
∃ Signature					OK Cancel		
∃ IDP Report							
Anomaly Flow IP	Set default action	n of all signatures	_				
🗷 Monitor	High Risk	Drop 🚩	🗹 Log	([Pass] recommended)			
Monitor	Medium Risk	Drop 🔽	💌 Log	([Pass] recommended)			
	Low Risk	Pass 🗸	VI. or	([Pass] recommended)			

STEP 2. Enter the following setting in Custom of Signature function:

- Click New Entry.
- Name: Enter Software_Crack_Website.
- **Protocol**: Select TCP.
- Source Port: Enter 0:65535.
- **Destination Port**: Enter 80:80.
- Risk: Select High.
- Action: Select Drop and enable Log function.

■ Content : Enter cracks.				
PLANET Returbing & Communication	> Signature > Custom			
■ System				
📕 Interface	Add New Signature			
🗷 Policy Object	Name	Software_Crack_Website		
📧 Policy	Protocol			
📧 Mail Security	Source Port	0:65535		
⊫ IDP	Destination Port	80:80		
■ Configure	 Risk	High V		
🖻 Signature				
Anomaly	Action	Drop 💌 🔽 Log		
→ Pre-defined	Content	cracks		
L⇒ Custom				

Click OK to finish the IDP setting.

PLANET Networking & Communication								
	IDP > Signature > Custom							
l System								
Interface	Name	Protocol	Src. Port	Dst. Port	Risk	Action	Log	Configure
Policy Object	Software_Crack_Website	TCP	0:65535	80:80	0	×	v	Modify Remove
Policy								
Mail Security				New Entry				
IIDP								
€ Configure								
∃ Signature								
Anomaly								
Pre-defined								
-+ Custom								

STEP 3. Enter the following settings in Outgoing Policy to enable the IDP function:

PLANET		
Vetworking & Communication Policy > Or	utgoing	
🖬 System	Comment :	
■ Interface ■ Policy Object	Modify Policy	
E Policy	Source Address	Inside_Any 🔽
L⇒ Outgoing	Destination Address	Outside_Any 🔽
→ Incoming	Service	ANY
-+ WAN To DMZ	Schedule	None 🗸
→ LAN To DMZ	Authentication User	None 🗸
→ DMZ To WAN → DMZ To LAN	Trunk	None 🔽
Mail Security	Action, WAN Port	PERMIT ALL
IDP	Traffic Log	Enable
🕫 Anomaly Flow IP	Statistics	Enable
🎟 Monitor	IDP	
	Content Blocking	
	MAX. Concurrent Sessions	0 (0:means unlimited)
	QoS	None 💌

3.6.3 IDP Report

CS-1000 can make intrusion detection and prevention record to a Log report, and allow administrator to know

the network security status for the overall network.

STEP 1. In **Log** of **IDP Report** function, it will display the situation about intrusion detection and prevention of CS-1000.

	IDP > IDP Report > Li	og					
System							
Interface	Time	Event	Signature Class.	Interface	Attack IP	Victim IP:Port	A
Policy Object			No Data				
Policy							
Mail Security							
IDP							
∎ Configure							
Signature							
IDP Report							
_⇒ Log							

Icon Definition:

1. Action:



2. Risk:

	8	•
High Risk	Medium Risk	Low Risk

3.7 Anomaly Flow IP

The Administrator can enable the device's auto detect functions for Anomaly Flow IP attacking the local network. When abnormal conditions occur, CS-1000 will send an e-mail alert to notify the Administrator, and also display warning messages in the Virus-infected IP window.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Anomaly Flow IP > Setting
■ System	Anoracle Clow ID Cetting
🎟 Interface	Anomaly Flow IP Setting
🖬 Policy Object	The threshold sessions of anomaly flow (per source IP) is 30 Sessions / Sec
🗉 Policy	Enable Anomaly Flow IP Blocking Blocking Time 60 seconds
🖬 Mail Security	
IDP	Enable E-Mail Alert Notification
🖻 Anomaly Flow IP 🛛 🗲 🗲 👘	Enable NetBIOS Alert Notification
_ ⇒ Setting	Enable NetBIOS Alert Notification IP Address of Administrator
➡ Virus-infected IP	OK Cancel
🎟 Monitor	

Anomaly Flow IP Settings

Enable Anomaly Flow IP Blocking: Select this option to enable the Anomaly Flow IP blocking function. Once the Anomaly Flow IP attacked is detected, it will block the

connection for user-drefined blocking time.

- Enable E-mail Alert Notification: When Anomaly Flow IP attacked is detected, send alert e-mail to administrator by using e-mail address defined on System -> Setting.
- Enable NetBIOS Alert Notification: When Anomaly Flow IP attacked is detected, send alart message to administrator by using "Net send" command.

After enabling the needed options, click OK to activate the changes.

3.8 Monitor

CS-1000 provides varied of information that can be used to check the status.

3.8.1 Log

The Multi-Homing Security Gateway supports traffic logging and event logging to monitor and record services, connection times, and the source and destination network address. The Administrator may also download the log files for backup purposes. The Administrator mainly uses the Log menu to monitor the traffic passing through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

What is Log?

Log records all connections that pass through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway's control policies. Traffic log's parameters are setup when setting up control policies. Traffic logs record the details of packets such as the start and stop time of connection, the duration of connection, the source address, the destination address and services requested, for each control policy. Event logs record the contents of System Configuration changes made by the Administrator such as the time of change, settings that change, the IP address used to log on, etc.

How to use the Log

The Administrator can use the log data to monitor and manage the device and the networks. The Administrator can view the logged data to evaluate and troubleshoot the network, such as pinpointing the source of traffic congestions.

3.8.1.1 Traffic

The Administrator queries the Multi-Homing Security Gateway for information, such as source address, destination address, start time, and Protocol port of all connections.

Entering the Traffic Log window

Step 1. Click the **Traffic** option under **Log** menu to enter the Traffic Log window.

System						
nterface			Apr 10 04:13:4	19 🔽		
Policy Object						
Policy	Time	Source	Destination	Protocol	Port	Disposition
fail Security	Apr 10 04:13:49	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1160 => 80	 ✓
)P	Apr 10 04:13:49	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1159 => 80	V
nomaly Flow IP	Apr 10 04:13:49	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1158 => 80	V
lonitor	Apr 10 04:12:45	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1157 => 80	 ✓
_0q	Apr 10 04:12:45	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1156 => 80	V
Traffic ++	Apr 10 04:11:14	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1155 => 80	V
▶ Event	Apr 10 04:11:14	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1154 => 80	6
Connection	Apr 10 04:10:29	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1153 => 80	6
Log Backup	Apr 10 04:10:11	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1152 => 80	6
Accounting Report	Apr 10 04:10:11	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1151 => 80	6
Statistics	Apr 10 04:09:21	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1150 => 80	6
Status	Apr 10 04:09:20	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1149 => 80	V
	Apr 10 04:06:45	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1148 => 80	V
	Apr 10 04:06:44	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1147 => 80	<i>V</i>
	Apr 10 04:05:37	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1146 => 80	<i>✓</i>
	Apr 10 04:05:37	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1145 => 80	<i>V</i>
	Apr 10 04:04:49	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1144 => 80	<i></i>
	Apr 10 04:02:12	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1144 => 80	×

Traffic Log Table

The table in the Traffic Log window displays current System statuses:

Definition:

- **Time**: The start time of the connection.
- **Source:** IP address of the source network of the specific connection.
- **Destination:** IP address of the destination network of the specific connection.
- **Protocol:** Protocol type of the specific connection.
- **Port:** Port number of the specific connection.
- **Disposition:** Accept or Deny.

Downloading the Traffic Logs

The Administrator can backup the traffic logs regularly by downloading it to the computer.

- Step 1. In the Traffic Log window, click the **Download Logs** button at the bottom of the screen.
- **Step 2.** Follow the File Download pop-up window to save the traffic logs into a specified directory on the hard drive.

Clearing the Traffic Logs

The Administrator may clear on-line logs to keep just the most updated logs on the screen.

Step 1. In the Traffic Log window, click the Clear Logs button at the bottom of the screen.

ystem			Apr 10 04:13:4	9 🗸		
iterface			•			
olicy Object	Time	Source	Destination	Protocol	Port	Disposition
olicy	Apr 10 04:13:49	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1160 => 80	2
ail Security PP	Apr 10 04:13:49	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1159 => 80	V
r Iomaly Flow IP	Apr 10 04:13:49	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1158 => 80	V
onitor	Apr 10 04:12:45 🔥	licrosoft Internet	Explorer 🛛 🔀	TCP	1157 => 80	V
Dg	Apr 10 04:12:45			TCP	1156 => 80	V
Traffic	Apr 10 04:11:14	Do you rea	illy want to clean ?	TCP	1155 => 80	V
Event	Apr 10 04:11:14	4		TCP	1154 => 80	V
Connection	Apr 10 04:10:29	ОК	Cancel	TCP	1153 => 80	V
Log Backup	Apr 10 04:10:11	192.100.10.5	102.100.10.1	TCP	1152 => 80	V
ccounting Report	Apr 10 04:10:11	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1151 => 80	V
tatistics	Apr 10 04:09:21	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1150 => 80	1
tatus	Apr 10 04:09:20	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1149 => 80	1
	Apr 10 04:06:45	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1148 => 80	1
	Apr 10 04:06:44	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1147 => 80	6
	Apr 10 04:05:37	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1146 => 80	1
	Apr 10 04:05:37	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1145 => 80	1
	Apr 10 04:04:49	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1144 => 80	6
	Apr 10 04:02:12	192.168.10.3	192.168.10.1	TCP	1144 => 80	

Step 2. In the Clear Logs pop-up box, click Ok to clear the logs or click Cancel to cancel it.

3.8.1.2 Event

When the Multi-Homing Security Gateway WAN detects events, the Administrator can get the details, such as time and description of the events from the Event Logs.

Entering the Event Log window

Step 1. Click the Event Log option under the Log menu and the Event Log window will appear.

System		Apr 10 04:02:12 🗸
Interface		
Policy Object	Time	Event
Policy	Apr 10 04:02:12	admin Export [Blacklist] (Export File To Client) from 192.168.10.3
Mail Security	Apr 10 04:01:03	admin Add [Blacklist] (Blacklist Address: hacker Direction: From Training: Disable) from 192.168.10.3
IDP Anomaly Flow IP	Apr 10 03:55:13	admin Export [Whitelist] (Export File To Client) from 192.168.10.3
Monitor	Apr 10 03:55:11	admin Add [Whitelist] (Whitelist Address: planet Direction: From Training: Disable) from 192.168.10.3
i Log	Apr 10 03:54:21	admin Remove [Whitelist] (Whitelist Address: Direction: To Training: Disable) from 192.168.10.3
► Traffic	Apr 10 03:54:18	admin Remove [Whitelist] (Whitelist Address: hotmail Direction: To Training: Disable) from 192.168.10.3
.⇒ Event	Apr 10 03:52:57	admin Remove [Spam Rule] (Rule Name : test) from 192.168.10.3
➡ Connection	Apr 10 03:52:19	admin Add [Spam Rule] (Rule Name : test) from 192.168.10.3
🔸 Log Backup	Apr 10 03:48:57	admin Remove [Spam Rule] (Rule Name : test) from 192.168.10.3
Accounting Report	Apr 10 03:39:54	admin Remove [Mail Relay] (Subnet / Mask: 204.22.193.23 / 255.255.255.0) from 192.168.10.3
Statistics	Apr 10 03:36:46	admin Add [Policy](DMZ to External,DMZ_Any=>Outside_Any,ANY,permit) from 192.168.10.3
l Status	Apr 10 03:34:19	admin Modify [Policy](External to DMZ,Outside_Any=>DMZ_Any(Routing),ANY,permit) from 192.168.10.3
	Apr 10 03:33:34	(null) Add [Policy](External to DMZ,Outside_Any=>DMZ_Any(Routing),ANY,permit) from 192.168.10.3
	Apr 10 03:12:27	(null) Add [Multiple Subnet] (Internal IP : 192.168.2.1 Netmask : 255.255.255.0) from 192.168.10.3
	Apr 10 03:04:31	(null) WAN1 is disconnected
	Apr 10 02:42:31	user admin [Login success] from 192.168.10.3
	Apr 9 23:56:30	(null) WAN1 is connected
	Apr 9 23:56:00	(null) WAN1 is disconnected

Step 2. The table in the Event Log window displays the time and description of the events.

- **Time:** time when the event occurred.
- **Event:** description of the event.

Downloading the Event Logs

- **Step 1.** In the Event Log window, click the Download Logs button at the bottom of the screen.
- **Step 2.** Follow the File Download pop-up window to save the event logs into a specific directory on the hard drive.

Clearing the Event Logs

The Administrator may clear on-line event logs to keep just the most updated logs on the screen.

- Step 1. In the Event Log window, click the Clear Logs button at the bottom of the screen.
- Step 2. In the Clear Logs pop-up box, click OK to clear the logs or click Cancel to cancel it.

System		Apr 10.0	4:02:12 🗸	
Interface		100		
Policy Object	Time		Event	
Policy	Apr 10 04:02:12	admin Export [Blacklist] (Export File To Clie	nt) from 192.168.10.3	
Mail Security	Apr 10 04:01:03		acker Direction: From Training: Disable) from 192.168.10.3	
IDP	Apr 10 03:55:13	admin Export [Whitelist] (Export File To Clie		
Anomaly Flow IP	Apr 10 03:55:11		Direction: From Training: Disable) from 192.168.10.3	
Monitor	Apr 10 03:54:21	ad	rection: To Training: Disable) from 192.168.10.3	
E Log	Apr 10 03:54:18	ad 🕐 Do you really want to clea		
_⇒ Traffic	Apr 10 03:52:57	ad	rom 192.168.10.3	
→ Event → Connection	Apr 10 03:52:19	ad OK Cancel	192.168.10.3	
_⇒ Connection _⇒ Log Backup	Apr 10 03:48:57	ad	rom 192.168.10.3	
E Accounting Report	Apr 10 03:39:54	admin Remove [Mail Relav] (Subnet / Mask	: 204.22.193.23 / 255.255.255.0) from 192.168.10.3	
■ Statistics	Apr 10 03:36:46		Any=>Outside_Any,ANY,permit) from 192.168.10.3	
- Status	Apr 10 03:34:19		side_Any=>DMZ_Any(Routing),ANY,permit) from 192.168.10.3	
	Apr 10 03:33:34		aany=>DMZ_Any(Routing),ANY,permit) from 192.168.10.3	
	Apr 10 03:12:27		2.168.2.1 Netmask : 255.255.255.0) from 192.168.10.3	
	Apr 10 03:04:31	(null) WAN1 is disconnected		
	Apr 10 02:42:31	user admin [Login success] from 192.168	.10.3	
	Apr 9 23:56:30	(null) WAN1 is connected		
	Apr 9 23:56:00	(null) WAN1 is disconnected		

3.8.1.3 Connection

Click Log in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select the sub-selection Connection Log.

System Interface		Jan 1 00:02:49 🗸
Policy Object		
Policy	Time	Connection Log
fail Security	Jan 1 00:02:49	including NAT-Traversal patch (Version 0.6)
DP	Jan 1 01:12:17	added connection description "Site_B_1"
nomaly Flow IP	Jan 1 01:12:24	listening for IKE messages
Aonitor	Jan 1 01:12:24	adding interface ipsec0/eth1 192.168.99.92
Log	Jan 1 01:12:24	adding interface ipsec0/eth1 192.168.99.92:4500
➡ Traffic	Jan 1 01:12:27	"Site_B_1" #1: initiating Main Mode
➡ Event	Jan 1 01:12:37	"Site_B_1" #1: max number of retransmissions (0) reached STATE_MAIN_1. No acceptable response to our first IKE message
Connection	Jan 1 01:12:50	"Site_B_1": unroute-host command exited with status 7
🕈 Log Backup 🧧 🗲 🗲	Jan 1 01:12:51	"Site_B_1": deleting connection
Accounting Report	Jan 1 01:12:54	added connection description "Site_B_1"
Statistics	Jan 1 01:13:01	listening for IKE messages
Status	Jan 1 01:13:01	forgetting secrets
	Jan 1 01:13:05	"Site_B_1" #2: initiating Main Mode
	Jan 1 01:13:16	"Ste_B_1" #2: max number of retransmissions (0) reached STATE_MAIN_1. No acceptable response to our first IKE message
	Jan 1 01:13:53	"Site_B_1": terminating SAs using this connection
	Jan 1 01:13:55	"Site_B_1": unroute-host command exited with status 7
	Jan 1 01:13:55	"Site_B_1": deleting connection
	Jan 1 01:14:08	added connection description "Site_B_1"

Definition:

Time: The start and end time of connection.

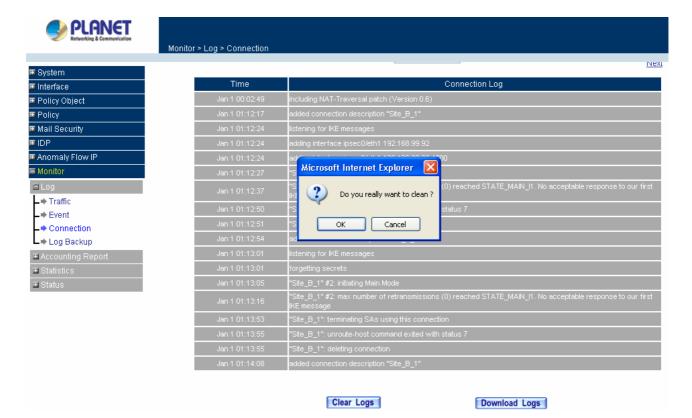
Connection Log: Event description during connection.

Download Logs

- Step 1. Click Log in the menu bar on the left hand side and then select the sub-selection Connection Log.
- Step 2. In Connection Log window, click the Download Logs button.
- Step 3. In the Download Logs window, save the logs to the specified location.

Clear Logs

- Step 1. Click Log in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select the sub-selection Connection Logs.
- Step 2. In Connection Log window, click the Clear Logs button.
- Step 3. In Clear Logs window, click OK to clear the logs or click Cancel to discard changes.



3.8.1.4 Log Backup

Click Log →Log Backup.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Monitor > Log > Log Backup
System Interface Policy Object Policy Mail Security	Log Mail Configuration Enable Log Mail Support When Log Full (300Kbytes), Multi-Homing Security Gateway Appliance sends Log You must enable the E-mail Alarm
 ✓ IDP ✓ Anomaly Flow IP ✓ Monitor ✓ Log → Traffic → Event → Connection → Log Backup 	Syslog Setting Enable Syslog Messages Syslog Host IP Address Syslog Host Port (ex: 192.168.1.61) OK

Log Mail Configuration: When the Log Mail files accumulated up to 300Kbytes, router will notify administrator by email with the traffic log and event log.

NOTE: Before enabling this function, you have to configure E-mail Settings in System -> Settings.

Syslog Settings: If you enable this function, system will transmit the Traffic Log and the Event Log simultaneously to the server which supports Syslog function.

NOTE: To restart Connection Log, click the Refresh button on the right hand side in Log window.

Enable Log Mail Support & Syslog Message

Log Mail Configuration /Enable Log Mail Support

- Step 1. Firstly, go to Admin –Select Enable E-mail Alert Notification under E-Mail Settings. Enter the e-mail address to receive the alarm notification. Click OK.
- Step 2. Go to Log →Log Backup. Check enable Log Mail Support. Click OK.

Syslog Settings/Enable Syslog Message

- Step 1. Check to enable Syslog Message. Enter the Host IP Address and Host Port number to send out message to syslog server.
- Step 2. Click OK.

	Monitor > Log > Log Backup
System Interface Policy Object Policy Mail Security IDP	Log Mail Configuration Enable Log Mail Support When Log Full (300Kbytes), Multi-Homing Security Gateway Appliance sends Log You must enable the E-mail Alarm Syslog Setting
Anomaly Flow IP Monitor Cog Straffic Connection Log Connection Log Backup	Image: System System System System System Fort 192.168.1.10 (ex: 192.168.1.61) System Sy

Disable Log Mail Support & Syslog Message

Step 1. Go to **LOG** → **Log Backup**. Uncheck to disable Log Mail Support. Click **OK**.

Step 2. Go to LOG →Log Backup. Uncheck to disable Settings Message. Click OK.

3.8.2 Accounting Report

Accounting Report can be divided into three parts, Setting, Outbound and Inbound.

3.8.2.1 Setting

Select **Setting** to configure what type of Accounting Report will be logged at CS-1000. There are three types of report can be select: **Source IP**, **Destination IP** and **Service**.

Outbound Accounting Report: the statistics of the downstream and upstream for the LAN, WAN and all kinds of communication services.

Source IP: Select to record the statistic based on Source IP address.

Destination IP: Select to record the statistic based on Destination IP address.

Service: Select to record the statistic based on Service.

Inbound Accounting Report: the statistics of downstream and upstream for all kinds of communication services; the Inbound Accounting report will be shown when WAN host connects to LAN host via CS-1000.

Source IP: Select to record the statistic based on Source IP address.

Destination IP: Select to record the statistic based on Destination IP address.

Service: Select to record the statistic based on Service.

Administrator can use this Accounting Report to inquire the LAN IP users and WAN IP users, and to gather the statistics of Downstream/Upstream, First packet/Last packet/Duration and the service for all the user's IP that passes through CS-1000.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Monitor > Accounting Report > Setting
¥ System ¥ Interface ¥ Policy Object ¥ Policy ¥ Mail Security ¥ Mail Security ¥ IDP ¥ Anomaly Flow IP ¥ Monitor ¥ Log △ Accounting Report	Accounting Report Setting Outbound Accounting Report Source IP Destination IP Service Inbound Accounting Report Source IP Service
– ➡ Setting – ➡ OutBound – ➡ InBound	OK

3.8.2.2 Outbound

Click the **Accounting Report** function, and then select **Outbound**. There are three options for outbound acounting report: Source IP, Destination IP and Services.

System Interface Policy Object						Top: 1 - 2	2 💌	Star	ting Time : Thu Apr	6 11:16:10 20
Policy	No.	Source IP 🛛 🔽 🔽	Down	stream 🔻	Upstrea	am 🔻	First Packet 🔻	Last Packet 🔻	Duration 🔻	Action
Mail Security	1	192.168.10.2	3.3 MB	99.9%	327.4 KB	99.9%	04/07 01:41:46	04/10 02:34:10	3D 00:52:24	Remove
IDP	2	192.168.10.3	3.4 KB	0.1%	470.0 B	0.1%	04/10 02:56:22	04/10 02:57:23	00:01:01	Remove
Anomaly Flow IP		Total Traffic	3.	З МВ	327.8	КВ		Report	ing time Mon Apr 1	0 04:23:45 20
Monitor Log I Accounting Report -→ Setting									Res	et Counter

Outbound Source IP Accounting Report

Pull down the menu and select Source IP to show the outbound source IP accounting report.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Monit	tor > Accounting Report	> OutBound	I						
■ System						Тор: 1-:	2 🗸			
■ Interface ■ Policy Object						rop. [·		Star	ting Time : Thu Apr	6 11:16:10 2006
E Policy Object	No.	Source IP 🛛 🔽 🔽	Down	stream 🔻	Upstrea	am 🔻	First Packet 🔻	Last Packet 🔻	Duration 🔻	Action
🗷 Mail Security	1	192.168.10.2	3.3 MB	99.9%	327.4 KB	99.9%	04/07 01:41:48	04/10 02:34:10	3D 00:52:24	Remove
IDP	2	192.168.10.3	3.4 KB	0.1%	470.0 B	0.1%	04/10 02:56:22	04/10 02:57:23	00:01:01	Remove
🗉 Anomaly Flow IP		Total Traffic	3.	3 МВ	327.8	КВ		Report	ting time Mon Apr 1	
 Monitor ▲ Log Accounting Report → Setting → OutBound → InBound 									Res	et Counters

When LAN users connect to WAN service server through CS-1000, all of the Downstream / Upstream / First Packet / Last Packet / Duration log of the source IP will be recorded.

Definition:

Top: Select the data type you want to check. It presents 10 results in one page.

Source IP: The LAN user's IP address connects to CS-1000 to access WAN service server.

Downstream: The percentage of downstream and the statistic value of the connection from WAN server to LAN user.

Upstream: The percentage of upstream and the statistic value of the connection from LAN user to WAN server.

First Packet: The time record of the first packet that was sent to WAN service server from LAN user.

Last Packet: The time record of the last packet sent from WAN server and received by the LAN user

Duration: The time statistic record that started from the first packet and end to the last packet.

Total Traffic: CS-1000 will record the sum of upstream/downstream packets from LAN user to WAN service server.

Reset Counters: Click Reset Counters button to refresh Accounting Report.

Outbound Destination IP Accounting Report

Pull down the menu and select **Destination IP** to show the outbound destination IP accounting report.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	Mon	itor > Accounting Report >	• OutBoun	d						
≖ System						Top: 1	1 -			
🗉 Interface						rop.		Stee	ting Time : Thu Apr	e 44-4e-40 000e
🎟 Policy Object										
🗉 Policy	No.	Destination IP 💌 🔽	Dowr	nstream 🥆	Upstr	eam 🔻	First Packet 🔻	Last Packet 🔻	Duration 🔻	Action
🏾 Mail Security	1			100.0%		100.0%	04/07 02:07:13	04/07 02:07:13		Remove
IDP		Total Traffic		54.0 B	46	.0 B		Repo	orting time Sun Apr	9 02:38:22 2006
🗉 Anomaly Flow IP										
🖻 Monitor									Res	et Counters
'⊞ Log										
⊟ Accounting Report										
→ Setting										
→ OutBound										
L⇒ InBound										

When LAN user connect to WAN service server through CS-1000, all of the Downstream / Upstream / First Packet / Last Packet / Duration log of the Destination IP will be recorded.

Definition:

Top: Select the data type you want to check. It presents 10 results in one page.

Destination IP: The WAN Server's IP address.

Downstream: The percentage of downstream and the statistic value of the connection from LAN user to WAN server.

Upstream: The percentage of upstream and the statistic value of the connection from WAN server to LAN user.

First Packet: The time record of the first packet that was sent to LAN user from WAN service server. Last Packet: The time record of the last packet sent from LAN user and received by the WAN server Duration: The time statistic record that started from the first packet and end to the last packet. Total Traffic: CS-1000 will record the sum of upstream/downstream packets from LAN user to WAN service server.

Outbound Service Accounting Report

Pull down the menu and select Service to show the outbound service accounting report.

PLANET Networking & Communication	Monitor > Accounting Report > Ou	utBound	
System Interface		Service Distribution	
Policy Object			
Policy	- No.	Downstream	
Mail Security	1 HTTP [80]	3.1 MBytes (96.3%)	
I IDP Anomaly Flow IP	2 DNS [53]	16.6 KBytes (0.5%)	
Monitor	3 UNKNOW [1056]	16.4 KBytes (0.5%)	
a Log	4 UNKNOW [11159]	13.2 KBytes (0.4%)	
Accounting Report	5 UNKNOW [33085]	9.5 KBytes (0.3%)	
_⇒ Setting	6 UNKNOW [49160]	5.9 KBytes (0.2%)	-
- OutBound	7 UNKNOW [50588]	5.3 KBytes (0.2%)	
-⇒InBound	8 UNKNOW [54045]	5.2 KBytes (0.2%)	
Statistics	9 UNKNOW [5317]	5.1 KBytes (0.2%)	
Status	10 UNKNOW [15199]	5.0 KBytes (0.1%)	
	OTHER	41.1 KBytes (1.2%)	

When LAN users connect to WAN Service Server through CS-1000, all of the Downstream / Upstream / First Packet / Last Packet / Duration log of the Communication Service will be recorded.

Definitions:

Top: Select the data type you want to check. It presents 10 results in one page.

Service: The report of Communication Service when LAN users connect to WAN service server through CS-1000. (**Port**) indicates the protocol port number.

Downstream: The percentage of downstream and the statistic value of the connection from WAN server to LAN user.

Upstream: The percentage of upstream and the statistic value of the connection from LAN user to WAN server.

First Packet: The time record of the first packet that was sent to WAN service server from LAN user. Last Packet: The time record of the last packet sent from WAN server and received by the LAN user Duration: The time statistic record that started from the first packet and end to the last packet Total Traffic: CS-1000 will record the sum of upstream/downstream packets from LAN user to WAN service server.

NOTE: To correctly display the pizza chart, please install the latest java VM for http://www.java.com.

3.8.2.3 Inbound

Click the **Accounting Report** function, and then select **Inbound**. There are three options for Inbound acounting report: Source IP, Destination IP and Service.

System										
Interface						Тор: 1 - б	δ 💌			
Policy Object								Start	ing Time : Thu Apr	6 11:16:10 2
Policy	No.	Source IP 🛛 💌 🤝	Upstre	am 🔻	Downstr	eam 🔻	First Packet 🔻	Last Packet 🔻	Duration 🔻	Action
Mail Security	1	211.75.117.114	13.6 MB	100.0%	211.0 KB	99.1%	04/07 12:43:10	04/07 13:10:23	00:27:13	Remove
DP	2	82.226.135.163	1.0 KB	0.0%	675.0 B	0.3%	04/08 06:46:30	04/08 13:29:13	06:42:43	Remov
Anomaly Flow IP	З	67.78.0.138	935.0 B	0.0%	655.0 B	0.3%	04/07 17:11:59	04/08 06:07:30	12:55:31	Remov
fonitor	4	83.19.250.74	477.0 B	0.0%	336.0 B	0.2%	04/07 14:37:26	04/07 14:37:32	00:00:06	Remov
Log	5	67.71.33.201	467.0 B	0.0%	284.0 B	0.1%	04/08 13:03:05	04/08 13:03:06	00:00:01	Remov
Accounting Report	6	80.51.174.70	44.0 B	0.0%	88.0 B	0.0%	04/08 13:11:28	04/08 13:11:29	00:00:01	Remov
♦ Setting ♦ OutBound		Total Traffic	13.6	MB	213.0) KB		Report	ing time Mon Apr 1	_

Inbound Source IP Accounting Report

Pull down the menu and select Source IP to show the inbound source IP accounting report.

	Moni	itor > Accounting Report	t≻ InBound							
s System Interface Policy Object						Тор: 1-0	6 💙	Starl	ing Time : Thu Apr	6 11:16:10 20
Policy	No.	Source IP 🛛 🔽 🔽	Upstre	eam 🔫	Downst	eam 🔻	First Packet 🔻	Last Packet 🔻	Duration 🔻	Action
Mail Security	1	211.75.117.114	13.6 MB	100.0%	211.0 KB	99.1%	04/07 12:43:10	04/07 13:10:23	00:27:13	Remove
IDP	2	82.226.135.163	1.0 KB	0.0%	675.0 B	0.3%	04/08 06:46:30	04/08 13:29:13	06:42:43	Remove
Anomaly Flow IP	3	67.78.0.138	935.0 B	0.0%	655.0 B	0.3%	04/07 17:11:59	04/08 06:07:30	12:55:31	Remove
Monitor	4	83.19.250.74	477.0 B	0.0%	336.0 B	0.2%	04/07 14:37:26	04/07 14:37:32	00:00:06	Remove
Log	5	67.71.33.201	467.0 B	0.0%	284.0 B	0.1%	04/08 13:03:05	04/08 13:03:06	00:00:01	Remove
Accounting Report	6	80.51.174.70	44.0 B	0.0%	88.0 B	0.0%	04/08 13:11:28	04/08 13:11:29	00:00:01	Remove
-⇒ Setting -⇒ OutBound -⇒ InBound		Total Traffic	13.6	i MB	213.0) KB		Report	ing time Mon Apr 1	
									Res	et Counter

When WAN users connect to LAN service server through CS-1000, all of the Downstream / Upstream / First Packet / Last Packet / Duration log of the source IP will be recorded.

Definitions:

Top: Select the data type you want to check. It presents 10 results in one page.

Source IP: The IP address used by WAN host.

Downstream: The percentage of Downstream and the statistic value of the connection from LAN host to WAN host via CS-1000.

Upstream: The percentage of Upstream and the statistic value of the connection from WAN host to LAN host via CS-1000.

First Packet: The time record of the first packet that was sent from WAN host to LAN host.

Last Packet: The time record of the last packet that sent from WAN host to LAN host.

Duration: The time statistic record that started from the first packet and end to the last packet. **Total Traffic:** CS-1000 will record the sum of upstream/downstream packets from WAN host to LAN host.

Inbound Destination IP Accounting Report

Pull down the menu and select **Destination IP** to show the inbound destination IP accounting report.

	Mon	itor > Accounting Report >	InBound							
■ System ■ Interface ■ Policy Object						Тор: 1 - 1	1 💌	Star	ting Time : Thu Apr	6 11:16:10 2006
Policy	No.	Destination IP 💌 🤝	Upstre	eam 🔻	Downstr	eam 🔻	First Packet 🔻	Last Packet 🔻	Duration 🔻	Action
🖬 Mail Security	1	192.168.10.2	13.6 MB	100.0%	213.0 KB	100.0%	04/07 12:43:10	04/08 13:29:13	1D 00:46:03	Remove
IDP		Total Traffic	13.6) MB	213.0	KB		Report	ing time Mon Apr 1	0 04:27:39 2006
Anomaly Flow IP Monitor Chapter									Res	et Counters
 ⇒ Accounting Report → Setting → OutBound → InBound 										

When WAN host connect to LAN through CS-1000, all of the Downstream/Upstream/First Packet/Last Packet/Duration log of the Destination IP will be recorded.

Definitions:

Top: Select the data type you want to check. It presents 10 results in one page.

Destination IP: The IP address used by LAN host.

Downstream: The percentage of Downstream and the statistic value of the connection from WAN host to LAN host via CS-1000.

Upstream: The percentage of Upstream and the statistic value of the connection from LAN host to WAN host via CS-1000.

First Packet: The time record of the first packet that was sent from LAN host to WAN host.

Last Packet: The time record of the last packet that sent from LAN host to WAN host.

Duration: The time statistic record that started from the first packet and end to the last packet.

Total Traffic: CS-1000 will record the sum of upstream/downstream packets from LAN host to WAN host.

Inbound Service Accounting Report

Pull down the menu and select Service to show the inbound service accounting report.

	Monitor > Accounting Report > In	Bound	
≆ System ≆ Interface ≆ Policy Object	1	Service Distribution	
I Policy	No.	Downstream	
🖬 Mail Security	1 UNKNOW [2226]	13.6 MBytes (99.9%)	
IDP	2 FTP [21]	7.5 KBytes (0.1%)	
Anomaly Flow IP			
🗏 Monitor	3 UNKNOW [2224]	1.1 KBytes (0.0%)	
∃ Log	4 FTP-DATA [20]	432.0 Bytes (0.0%)	
⊒ Accounting Report	OTHER	0.0 Bytes (0.0%)	
→ Setting			
_⇒ OutBound			
L⇒ InBound			
■ Statistics			
∃ Status			

When WAN host connect to LAN host through CS-1000, all of the Downstream/Upstream/First Packet/Last Packet/Duration log of the Communication Service will be recorded.

Definitions:

Top: Select the data type you want to check. It presents 10 results in one page.

Service: The report of Communication Service when WAN host connect to LAN host through CS-1000. **(Port)** indicates the protocol port number.

Downstream: The percentage of Downstream and the statistic value of the connection from WAN host to LAN host via CS1000.

Upstream: The percentage of Upstream and the statistic value of the connection from LAN host to WAN host via CS-1000.

First Packet: The time record of the first packet that was sent to LAN host from WAN host.

Last Packet: The time record of the last packet sent to LAN host from WAN host.

Duration: The time statistic record that started from the first packet and end to the last packet

Total Traffic: CS-1000 will record the sum of upstream/downstream packets from WAN host to LAN host.

NOTE: To correctly display the pizza chart, please install the latest java VM for <u>http://www.java.com</u>.

3.8.3 Statistic

In this chapter, the Administrator queries the Multi-Homing Security Gateway for statistics of packets and data which passes across the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. The statistics provides the Administrator with information about network traffics and network loads.

What is Statistics

Statistics are the statistics of packets that pass through the Multi-Homing Security Gateway by control policies

setup by the Administrator.

How to use Statistics

The Administrator can get the current network status from statistics, and use the information provided by statistics as a basis to mange networks.

How to apply WAN Statistics

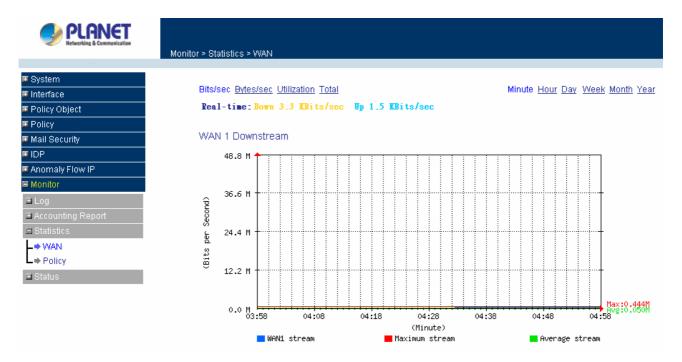
The Administrator needs to go to Policy to set the network IP addresses that you want to gather statistics. In this way, the administrator can handle the whole network condition and takes it as a basis of managing the network.

The administrator needs to go to the Policy to set the network IP of the statistics. By the WAN statistics you can obtain the status of the network.

3.8.3.1 WAN Statistics

Step 1. Click Statistics in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select WAN.

Step 2. The WAN Statistics will be displayed. It displays statistics of WAN network connections (downstream and upstream as well) in a total amount by minute (60 minutes), hour (24 hours), day (30 days), Month and Year. Select the time units (minute, hour, day, month or year) of the graph.



Y-Coordinate: Four options are available: Total, Bits/sec, Bytes/sec, and Utilization. **X-Coordinate**: Time (Minute/Hour/Day/Week/Month/Year).

3.8.3.2 Policy Statistics

Entering the Statistics window

The Statistics window displays the statistics of current network connections.

- Source: the name of source address.
- **Destination:** the name of destination address.
- Service: the service requested.
- Action: permit or deny
- **Time:** viewable by minutes, hours, days, week, month and year.

	Monitor > Statistics >	Policy				
stem			Destination	Ocurica	0.041.0.00	Time
iterface	Sou		Destination	Service	Action	Time
olicy Object	Inside	_Any	Outside_Any	ANY	 ✓ 	<u>Minute Hour Day Week Month Year</u>
Policy	Outsid				 ✓ 	<u>Minute Hour Day Week Month Year</u>
lail Security						
DP						
romaly Flow IP						
•						
lonitor						
.og						
Accounting Report						
Accounting Report						
Statistics						

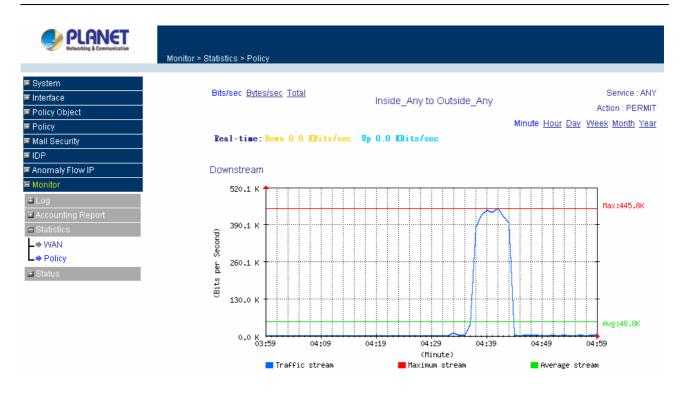
NOTE: To use Statistics, the administrator needs to go to Policy to enable Statistics function.

Entering the Policy Statistics

- Step 1. Click Statistics in the menu bar on the left hand side, and then select Policy Statistics.
- Step 2. In Statistics window, find the policy you want to view
- Step 3. In the Statistics window, click Minute on the right hand side, and then you will be able to view the Statistics figure every minute; click Hour to view the Statistics figure every hour; click Day to view the Statistics figure every day.

Y-Coordinate: There are three options: Total, Kbit/sec, Kbytes/sec.

X-Coordinate: Time (Minute/Hour/Day/Week/Month/Year).



3.8.4 Status

In this section, the device displays the status information about the Multi-Homing Security Gateway. Status will display the network information from the Configuration menu. The Administrator may also use Status to check the DHCP lease time and MAC addresses for computers connected to the Multi-Homing Security Gateway.

3.8.4.1 Interface Status

Entering the Interface Status window

Click on **Status** in the menu bar, then click **Interface Status** below it. A window will appear providing information from the Configuration menu. **Interface Status** will list the settings for **LAN Interface**, **WAN 1/2 Interface**, and the **DMZ Interface**.

System	Active Sessions Number : 3			Sustain Uniting : 5 De	ay 20 Hour 56 Min 46
Interface	Active Sessions Number : 5	1.451	1010014		
Policy Object		LAN	WAN1	WAN2	DMZ
Policy	Forwarding Mode	NAT	Static IP	Disable	NAT
Mail Security	WAN Connection		<u></u>	₽.	
IDP	Max. Downstream / Upstream		50000 / 50000 Kbps		
Anomaly Flow IP	Downstream Alloca.		100%	0%	
Monitor	Upstream Alloca.		100%	0%	
Log	PPPoE Con. Time				
Accounting Report	MAC Address	00:e0:98:00:00:11	00:e0:98:00:00:12	00:e0:98:00:00:13	00:e0:98:00:00:1
Statistics	IP Address	192.168.10.1	210.66.155.90	0.0.0.0	192.168.30.1
a Status	Netmask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.224	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0
■◆ Interface	Default Gateway		210.66.155.94	0.0.0.0	
Authentication	DNS1		168.95.1.1	0.0.0.0	
ARP Table	DNS2		0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	
♦ DHCP Clients	R× Pkts, Error Pkts	54046, 0	1005976,0	0,0	0,0
	Tx Pkts, Error Pkts	59726,0	854635, 0	0,0	3,0
	Ping	×	×		2
	HTTP	×	×		

3.8.4.2 Authentication

Entering the Auth Status window

Click on **Status** in the menu bar, then click Authentication below it. A window will appear and provide information from the Auth User menu. Authentication Status will list the settings for Auth User login status.

Vetworking & Communication	Monitor > Status > Authentication			
System				
Interface	IP Address	Authentication-User Name	Login Time	Configure
Policy Object	192.168.10.3			Remove
Policy				
Mail Security				
IDP				
Anomaly Flow IP				
Monitor				
∎ Log				
Accounting Report				
▪ Statistics				
E Status				
→ Interface				
Authentication				
→ ARP Table				
■ DHCP Clients				

IP Address: The IP address of the host computer.

Auth-User Name: The Auth User Name of that host computer.

Login time: The Auth User login in time.

3.8.4.3 ARP Table

Entering the ARP Table window

Click on **Status** in the menu bar, then click **ARP Table** below it. A window will appear displaying a table with IP addresses and their corresponding MAC addresses. For each computer on the LAN, WAN, and DMZ network that replies to an ARP packet, the device will list them in this ARP table.

IP Address	MAC Address	Interface
		Interface
210.66.155.94		WAN 1
192.168.2.161	00:14:20:00:04:40	WAN 1
192.168.10.3	00:D0:59:59:79:2D	LAN

IP Address: The IP address of the host computer

MAC Address: The MAC address of that host computer

Interface: The port that the host computer is connected to (LAN, WAN 1/2, DMZ)

3.8.4.4 DHCP Clients

Entering the DHCP Clients window

Click on **Status** in the menu bar, then to click on **DHCP Clients** below it. A window will appear displaying the table of DHCP clients that are connected to the device. The table will list host computers on the LAN network that obtain its IP address from the Multi-Homing Security Gateway's DHCP server function.

nterface				
Policy Object	oject IP Address MAC Address	Leased Time		
Policy		MAC Address	Start	End
fail Security	192.168.10.3	00:d0:59:59:79:2d	2006/4/10 2:41:34	
DP	192.168.10.2	00:0e:a6:0f:8b:92	2006/4/10 1:19:10	2006/4/11 1:19:10
Aonitor Log Accounting Report Statistics Status				

MAC Address: MAC address of the LAN host computer

Leased Time: The Start and End time of the DHCP lease for the LAN host computer.